

1 David C. Marcus (SBN 158704)
david.marcus@wilmerhale.com
2 James M. Dowd (SBN 259578)
james.dowd@wilmerhale.com
3 Matthew J. Hawkinson (SBN 248216)
matthew.hawkinson@wilmerhale.com
4 Aaron Thompson (SBN 272391)
aaron.thompson@wilmerhale.com
5 WILMER CUTLER PICKERING
6 HALE AND DORR LLP
7 350 South Grand Avenue, Suite 2100
Los Angeles, CA 90071
8 Telephone: (213) 443-5300
Facsimile: (213) 443-5400
9

10 William F. Lee (pro hac vice)
william.lee@wilmerhale.com
11 WILMER CUTLER PICKERING
HALE AND DORR LLP
12 60 State Street
Boston, MA 02109
13 Telephone: (617) 526-6000
Facsimile: (617) 526-5000
14

15 Attorneys for Defendants and Counterclaim-Plaintiffs
Hughes Communications Inc.
16 Hughes Network Systems LLC
DISH Network Corporation,
17 DISH Network LLC, and
dishNET Satellite Broadband LLC
18

19 Additional Counsel Listed on Signature Page
20
21
22
23
24



Expert Report of Dr. Brendan Frey
Case No. 2:13-cv-07245-MRP-JEM

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
CENTRAL DISTRICT OF CALIFORNIA

THE CALIFORNIA INSTITUTE OF
TECHNOLOGY,

Plaintiff and Counter-Defendant,

vs.

HUGHES COMMUNICATIONS INC.,
HUGHES NETWORK SYSTEMS LLC,
DISH NETWORK CORPORATION,
DISH NETWORK LLC, and DISHNET
SATELLITE BROADBAND LLC,

Defendants and Counter-Plaintiffs.

Case No. 2:13-cv-07245-MRP-JEM

**EXPERT REPORT OF DR.
BRENDAN FREY REGARDING
INVALIDITY OF PATENTS-IN-
SUIT**

1 of the claimed invention. In my opinion, these documents do not demonstrate
2 conception for the reasons stated below.

3 6. I have also been asked for my opinion regarding whether three references
4 (two by Luby et al. and one by Richardson et al.) were material to the claimed
5 invention. In my opinion, as explained below, these three references, none of
6 which were before the patent office during prosecution of the asserted patents,
7 were material to the claimed invention.

8 **BACKGROUND**

9 **A. Qualifications and Experience**

10 7. I received a B.Sc. with Honors in Electrical Engineering from the University
11 of Calgary in 1990, a M.Sc. in Electrical and Computer Engineering from the
12 University of Manitoba in 1993, and a Ph.D. in Electrical and Computer
13 Engineering from the University of Toronto in 1997. Since July 2001, I have been
14 at the University of Toronto, where I am a Professor of Electrical and Computer
15 Engineering and Computer Science.

16 8. During my career I have conducted research in the areas of graphical models,
17 error-correcting coding, machine learning, genome biology and computer vision. I
18 have authored more than 200 publications and am named as an inventor on nine
19 patents issued by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office.

20 9. I have received a number of honors and awards for the research I have
21 conducted. In 2008, I was named a Fellow of the Institute for Electrical and
22 Electronic Engineers (IEEE), an honor given to a person with an “extraordinary
23 record or accomplishments” in the field of electrical engineering. In 2009, I was
24 named a Fellow of the American Association for the Advancement of Science
(AAAS), an honor that recognizes “efforts on behalf of the advancement of science
or its applications which are scientifically or socially distinguished.”

1 10. In 2009, I was awarded a Steacie Fellowship for my work on the theory and
2 implementation of artificial and natural mechanisms for inferring patterns from
3 data. The Steacie Fellowship is awarded by the Natural Sciences and Engineering
4 Research Council of Canada (NSERC) to “outstanding and highly promising
5 scientists and engineers” who are faculty members of Canadian universities. In
6 2011, I received the NSERC’s John C. Polanyi Award, in recognition of my
7 research on inferring genetic codes embedded in DNA that direct activities within
8 cells.

8 11. Throughout my career I have received funding from various governmental
9 agencies to support my research, including the Natural Sciences and Engineering
10 Research Council of Canada, the Canadian Institutes of Health Research, and the
11 Canadian Institute for Advanced Research.

12 12. A copy of my *curriculum vitae* is attached to this report as Exhibit A.

13 **B. Understanding of the Law**

14 13. I am not an attorney. For the purposes of this report, I have been informed
15 about certain aspects of the law that are relevant to my analysis and opinions. My
16 understanding of the law is as follows:

17 i) Invalidity in General

18 14. A patent is presumed valid, and a challenger to the validity of a patent must
19 show invalidity of the patent by clear and convincing evidence. Clear and
20 convincing evidence is evidence that makes a fact highly probable.

21 ii) Anticipation

22 15. A patent claim is invalid if it is “anticipated” by prior art. For the claim to
23 be invalid because it is anticipated, all of its requirements must have existed in a
24 single device or method that predates the claimed invention, or must have been
described in a single publication or patent that predates the claimed invention.

1 16. The description in a written reference does not have to be in the same words
2 as the claim, but all of the requirements of the claim must be there, either stated or
3 necessarily implied, so that someone of ordinary skill in the art, looking at that one
4 reference would be able to make and use the claimed invention.

5 17. A patent claim is also anticipated if there is clear and convincing proof that,
6 more than one year before the filing date of the patent, the claimed invention was:
7 in public use or on sale in the United States; patented anywhere in the world; or
8 described in a printed publication anywhere in the world. This is called a statutory
9 bar.

10 iii) Obviousness

11 18. A patent claim is invalid if the claimed invention would have been obvious
12 to a person of ordinary skill in the art at the time the application was filed. This
13 means that even if all of the requirements of a claim cannot be found in a single
14 prior art reference that would anticipate the claim or constitute a statutory bar to
15 that claim, the claim is invalid if it would have been obvious to a person of
16 ordinary skill who knew about the prior art.

17 19. The determination of whether a claim is obvious should be based upon
18 several factors, including:

- 19 • the level of ordinary skill in the art that someone would have had at the time
20 the claimed invention was made;
- 21 • the scope and content of the prior art;
- 22 • what difference, if any, existed between the claimed invention and the prior
23 art.

24 20. In considering the question of obviousness, it is also appropriate to consider
any secondary considerations of obviousness or non-obviousness that may be
shown. These include:

- commercial success of a product due to the merits of the claimed invention;

- 1 • a long felt need for the solution provided by the claimed invention;
- 2 • unsuccessful attempts by others to find the solution provided by the claimed invention;
- 3 • copying of the claimed invention by others;
- 4 • unexpected and superior results from the claimed invention;
- 5 • acceptance by others of the claimed invention as shown by praise from others in the field or from the licensing of the claimed invention; and
- 6 • independent invention of the claimed invention by others before or at about the same time as the named inventor thought of it.

7
8 21. A patent claim composed of several elements is not proved obvious merely
9 by demonstrating that each of its elements was independently known in the prior
10 art. In evaluating whether such a claim would have been obvious, it is relevant to
11 consider if there would have been a reason that would have prompted a person of
12 ordinary skill in the field to combine the elements or concepts from the prior art in
13 the same way as in the claimed invention. For example, market forces or other
14 design incentives may be what produced a change, rather than true inventiveness.

15 It is also appropriate to consider:

- 16 • whether the change was merely the predictable result of using prior art elements according to their known functions, or whether it was the result of true inventiveness;
- 17 • whether there is some teaching or suggestion in the prior art to make the modification or combination of elements claimed in the patent;
- 18 • whether the innovation applies a known technique that had been used to improve a similar device or method in a similar way; or
- 19 • whether the claimed invention would have been obvious to try, meaning that the claimed innovation was one of a relatively small number of possible approaches to the problem with a reasonable expectation of success by those of ordinary skill in the art.

20
21
22 22. In considering obviousness, it is important to be careful not to determine
23 obviousness using the benefit of hindsight; many true inventions might seem
24 obvious after the fact.

1 23. A single reference can alone render a patent claim obvious, if any
2 differences between that reference and the claims would have been obvious to a
3 person of ordinary skill in the art at the time of the alleged invention – that is, if the
4 person of ordinary skill could readily adapt the reference to meet the claims of the
5 patent, by applying known concepts to achieve expected results in the adaptation of
6 the reference.

6 iv) The “Written Description” Requirement

7 24. A patent claim is invalid if the patent specification does not contain a written
8 description of the invention to which the claim is directed. To satisfy the written
9 description requirement, a patent specification must describe the claimed invention
10 in sufficient detail that one of ordinary skill in the art can reasonably conclude that
11 the inventor had possession of the claimed invention.

12 25. An applicant shows possession of the claimed invention by describing the
13 claimed invention with all of its limitations using such descriptive means as words,
14 structures, figures, diagrams, and formulas that fully set forth the claimed
15 invention. A description that merely renders the invention obvious does not satisfy
16 the written description requirement.

16 v) Inequitable Conduct and Materiality

17 26. I have been informed that during prosecution, inventors have a duty to
18 disclose to the Patent Office all information known to the inventors that is material
19 to the patentability of the claims being examined.

20 27. Information is deemed to be material to patentability when it is not
21 cumulative to information already before the Patent Office, and when: (1) it
22 establishes, by itself or in combination with other information, that a claim was
23 unpatentable; or (2) it refutes, or is inconsistent with, a position the applicant takes

24

1 in (a) opposing an argument of unpatentability relied on by the Patent Office, or (b)
2 asserting an argument of patentability.

3 **C. Materials Reviewed**

4 28. Among the materials I have reviewed in forming my opinions are:

- 5 • The '710, '032, '781, and '833 patents;
- 6 • The prosecution histories of the '710, '032, '781, and '833 patents;
- 7 • The prior art of record that was available to the patent examiner;
- 8 • The prior art references discussed herein;
- 9 • Claim Construction Order dated August 6, 2014 (Dkt. No. 105);
- 10 • Declaration of Stephen B. Wicker, dated Oct. 6, 2014 (Dkt. No. 130-10);
- 11 • Transcript of the October 14, 2014 deposition of Stephen B. Wicker;
- 12 • IPR Petition No. IPR2015-00067 and accompanying exhibits, including the
13 declaration of Henry D. Pfister;
- 14 • IPR Petition No. IPR2015-00068 and accompanying exhibits, including the
15 declaration of Henry D. Pfister;
- 16 • IPR Petition No. IPR2015-00060 and accompanying exhibits, including the
17 declaration of Henry D. Pfister;
- 18 • IPR Petition No. IPR2015-00059 and accompanying exhibits, including the
19 declaration of Henry D. Pfister;
- 20 • IPR Petition No. IPR2015-00061 and accompanying exhibits, including the
21 declaration of Henry D. Pfister;
- 22 • IPR Petition No. IPR2015-00081 and accompanying exhibits, including the
23 declaration of Henry D. Pfister;
- 24 • Transcript of the December 11, 2014 deposition of inventor Aamod
Khandekar;
- Transcript of the January 7, 2015 deposition of inventor Hui Jin;
- Transcript of the Jan 15, 2015 deposition of Dariush Divsalar;
- Laboratory Notebook of Robert McEliece (CALTECH000004472-603);
- Caltech's Supplemental Responses to Defendants' First Set of
Interrogatories, Nos. 3-5, Jan. 11, 2015;

- 1 • Caltech's Second Supplemental Responses to Interrogatories 1-5 and
2 Caltech's First Supplemental Responses to Interrogatories 6-11;
3 • Email from Brendan Frey to Dariush Divsalar dated Dec. 8, 1999
4 (CALTECH000024021);
5 • Khandekar, Aamod ("Capacity Achieving Codes on the Binary Erasure
6 Channel") (CALTECH000007321-7349).
7 • Khandekar, Aamod, "Graph-based Codes and Iterative Decoding," thesis
8 dated June 10, 2002.
9 • McEliece Email dated March 7, 2000 (CALTECH000008667)
10 • Luby, M. et al., "Practical Loss-Resilient Codes," *STOC '97* (1997)
11 • Luby, M. et al., "Analysis of Low Density Codes and Improved Designs
12 Using Irregular Graphs," *STOC '98*, p. 249-259 (1998)
13 • Richardson, T. et al. "Design of provably good low-density parity check
14 codes," *IEEE Transactions on Information Theory* (1999) (preprint)

15 29. Level of Ordinary Skill in the Art

16 30. In my opinion, based on the materials and information I have reviewed, and
17 on my extensive experience working with people in the technical areas relevant to
18 the patents-in-suit (*i.e.* in the field of code design), a person of ordinary skill in the
19 art is a person with a Ph.D. in electrical or computer engineering with emphasis in
20 signal processing, communications, or coding, or a master's degree in the above
21 area with at least three years of work experience this field at the time of the alleged
22 invention.¹ I understand that Caltech has agreed with this definition of the level of
23 ordinary skill in this case.²³

24 ¹ I was asked to use a similar qualification for a "person of ordinary skill in the art" for purposes
of a declaration that I understand was filed in connection with petitions for *Inter Partes Review*
of the asserted patents. See Declaration of Brendan Frey dated October 14, 2014, at ¶2.

² Reporter's Transcript of Claim Construction and Motion Hearing of July 9, 2014, Ex. 1026, at
98.

³ This is also consistent with testimony given by, *e.g.*, Dr. Dariush Divsalar, an author of one of
the prior art references discussed in this report (*see* Divsalar Dep. at 55-56).

1 **D. Claim Constructions Used in This Report**

2 31. I understand that the parties have agreed on the following claim
 3 constructions:

Claim Term	Agreed-Upon Construction
“irregularly” (’710 and ’032 patents)	“a different number of times”
“interleaving” / “interleaver” / “scramble” (’710 patent)	“changing the order of data elements” / “module that changes the order of data elements”
“sums of bits in subsets of the information bits” / “summing of bits in a subset of the information bits” / “adding additional subsets of information bits” (’781 patent)	“the result(s) of adding together two or more information bits from a subset of information bits” / “adding together two or more information bits from a subset of information bits”
“wherein two or more memory locations of the first set of memory locations are read by the permutation module different times from one another” (’833 patent)	“where two or more memory locations of the first set of memory locations are read by the permutation module a different number of times from one another”
“permutation module” (’833 patent)	“a module that changes the order of data elements”

17 32. I further understand that the Court in this case has issued a claim
 18 construction order construing certain disputed claim terms as follows:

Claim Term	Court’s Construction
“transmitting” / “transmission” (’032 patent)	“sending over a channel”

1	“codeword” (’781 patent)	“a discrete encoded sequence of data elements”
2	“repeat” (’710 and ’032 patents)	plain meaning ⁴
3	“combine” / “combining” (’833 patent)	“perform logical operations on”
4	Equation in claim 1 of the ’032 patent (’032 patent)	“the parity bit x_j is the sum of (a) the parity bit x_{j-1} and (b) the sum of a number, ‘a,’ of randomly chosen irregular repeats of the message bits”
5	Tanner Graph term in claims 11 and 18 of ’032 patent (’032 patent)	“a graph representing an IRA code as a set of parity checks where every message bit is repeated, at least two different subsets of message bits are repeated a different number of times, and check nodes, randomly connected to the repeated message bits, enforce constraints that determine the parity bits”

13 33. For the purposes of this report, I have used the constructions given in the
14 two tables above. For all other claim terms, I have used the plain and ordinary
15 meaning the term would have to one of ordinary skill in the art.

16 **II. OVERVIEW OF THE TECHNOLOGY**

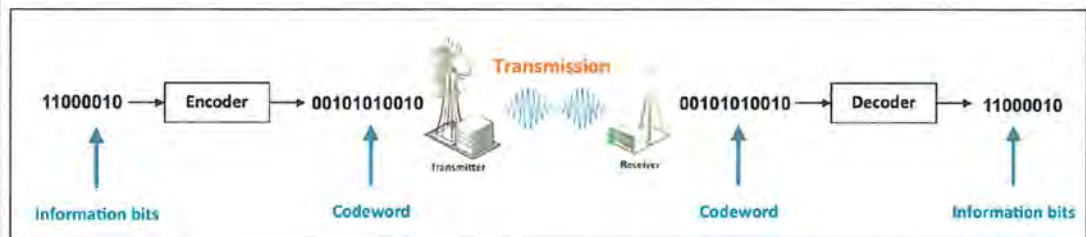
17 34. The four patents-in-suit, which share a common specification, relate to the
18 field of error-correcting codes. Below I provide a brief introduction to channel
19 coding and error-correcting codes, and highlight a few of the developments in the
20 field that are relevant to the asserted patents. Also, attached as Appendix A is a
21 mathematical description of some properties of error-correcting codes.

22 ⁴ The Claim Construction Order dated August 6, 2014 expounded on the plain meaning of
23 “repeat.” For example, the order said the “plain meaning of ‘repeat’ requires the creation of new
24 bits corresponding to or reflecting the value of the original bits. In other words, repeating a bit
with the value 0 will produce another bit with the value 0. The Court will refer to this concept as
duplication” (Claim Construction Order dated August 6, 2014, p. 10).

1 38. Error-correcting codes were developed to combat such transmission errors.
2 Using the bits representing the information to be communicated (called
3 “information bits”, “data bits” or “source bits”) an error-correcting code generates
4 “parity bits” that allow the receiver to verify that the bits were transmitted correctly,
5 and to correct transmission errors that may have occurred.

6 39. Bits are encoded by an *encoder*, which receives a sequence of information
7 bits as input, generates parity bits based on the information bits according to a
8 particular encoding algorithm, and outputs a sequence of encoded bits (or data
9 elements) called a *codeword*. The codeword produced by the encoder is then
10 modulated and transmitted as an analog signal.

11 40. At the receiver the signal is received, demodulated and passed to the *decoder*,
12 which uses a decoding algorithm to recover the original codeword and the original
13 information bits.



14 **Encoding and Decoding**

15
16
17 41. Error-correcting codes work by adding redundant information to the original
18 message. Due to redundancy, the information represented by a given information
19 bit is spread across multiple bits of the codeword. Thus, even if one of those bits is
20 flipped during transmission, the original information bit can still be recovered from
21 the others.

22 42. As a simple example, consider an encoding scheme, which I will call
23 “repeat-three,” that outputs three copies of each information bit. In this scheme,
24 the information bits “1 0 1” would be encoded as “111 000 111.” Upon receipt,

1 the decoder converts instances of “111” into “1” and instances of “000” into “0” to
2 produce the decoded bits “1 0 1,” which match the original information bits.

3 43. Suppose a bit is flipped during transmission, changing “000” to “010.” The
4 decoder will be able to detect that there was a transmission error, because “010” is
5 not a valid “repeat-three” codeword. Using a “majority vote” rule, the decoder can
6 infer that the original information bit was a 0, correcting the transmission error.
7 Thus, due to the redundancy incorporated into the codeword, no information was
8 lost due to the transmission error.

9 44. Error-correcting codes may be either *systematic* or *non-systematic*. In a
10 systematic code, both the parity bits and the original information bits are included
11 in the codeword. In a non-systematic code, the encoded data only includes the
12 parity bits.

13 45. Systematic and non-systematic codes had been known in the art for decades
14 prior to May 18, 2000, the claimed priority date of the patents-in-suit (*see, e.g.*,
15 Wicker Dep. at 77:15-20; *see also, e.g.*, Divsalar Dep. at pp. 66-67).

16 **B. Coding Rate**

17 46. Many error-correcting codes encode information bits in groups, or *blocks* of
18 fixed length n . An encoder receives an k -bit block of information bits as input, and
19 produces a corresponding n -bit codeword. The ratio k/n is called the *rate* of the
20 code. Because the codeword generally includes redundant information, n is
21 generally greater than k , and the rate k/n of an error-correcting code is generally
22 less than one.

23 **C. Performance of Error-Correcting Codes**

24 47. The effectiveness of an error-correcting code may be measured using a
variety of metrics.

1 48. One tool used to assess the performance of a code is its *bit-error rate* (BER).
2 The BER is defined as the number of corrupted information bits divided by the
3 total number of information bits during a particular time interval. For example, if a
4 decoder outputs 1000 bits in a given time period, and 10 of those bits are corrupted
5 (*i.e.*, they differ from the information bits originally received by the encoder), then
6 the BER of the code during that time period is (10 bit errors) / (1000 total bits) =
0.01 or 1%.⁵

7 49. The BER of a coded transmission depends on the amount of noise that is
8 present in the communication channel, the strength of the transmitted signal (*i.e.*,
9 the power that is used to transmit the modulated waveform), and the performance
10 of the error-correcting code. An increase in noise tends to increase the error rate
11 and an increase in signal strength tends to decrease the error rate. The ratio of the
12 signal strength to the noise, called the “signal-to-noise ratio,” is often used to
13 characterize the channel over which the encoded signal is transmitted. The signal-
14 to-noise ratio can be expressed mathematically as E_b/N_0 , in which E_b is the amount
15 of energy used to transmit each bit of the signal, and N_0 is the density of the noise
16 on the channel.⁶ The BER of an error-correcting code is often measured for
17 multiple values of E_b/N_0 to determine how the code performs under various
channel conditions.

18 50. Error-correcting codes may also be assessed based on their computational
19 complexity. The complexity of a code is a rough estimate of how many
20 calculations are required for the encoder to generate the encoded parity bits and
21 how many calculations are required for the decoder to reconstruct the information

22 ⁵ Note that as used herein, BER refers to the *information* BER, which measures the percentage of
bits that remain incorrect after decoding. This is not to be confused with the *transmission* BER,
which measures the percentage of bits that are incorrect when they are received by the decoder.

23 ⁶ More precisely, E_b/N_0 is the *normalized* signal-to-noise ratio. It is a dimensionless quantity that
24 does not depend on the particular units used to measure the strength of the signal and the
quantity of noise on the channel.

1 bits from the parity bits. If a code is too complex, it may be impractical to build
2 encoders/decoders that are fast enough to use it.

3 **D. LDPC Codes, Convolutional Codes, Turbocodes, and Repeat-
4 Accumulate codes**

5 51. In 1963, Robert Gallager described a set of error correcting codes called
6 Low Density Parity Check (“LDPC”) codes. Gallager described how LDPC codes
7 provide one method of generating parity bits from information bits using a matrix
8 populated with mostly 0s and relatively few 1s, and he described how decoding
9 could be performed using an iterative “message passing” decoding algorithm, as
described below.⁷

10 52. Gallager’s work was largely ignored over the following decades, as
11 researchers continued to discover other algorithms for calculating parity bits. These
12 algorithms included, for example, convolutional encoding (see below) with Viterbi
13 decoding and cyclic code encoding with bounded distance decoding. In many
14 cases these new codes could be decoded using low-complexity decoding
algorithms.

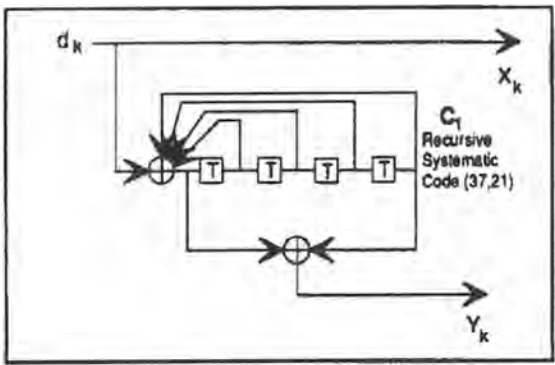
15 53. In 1993, researchers discovered “turbocodes,” a class of error-correcting
16 codes capable of transmitting information at a rate close to the Shannon Limit – the
17 maximum rate at which information can be transmitted over a channel.
18 Turbocodes make use of “convolutional codes”, which were described in the
19 1960’s and were widely used in telephone modems in the 1980’s and 1990’s. A
20 convolutional code is a type of error-correcting code that generates parity bits by
21 processing the information bits in order. The convolutional code contains a
22 “memory bank” in the form of a short sequence of bits, e.g., 4 bits. When an
23 information bit d_k is processed, the memory bits s_1, s_2, s_3, s_4 are combined with the
information bit to produce a new memory bit and the remaining memory bits are

24 ⁷ Gallager, R., *Low-Density Parity-Check Codes* (Monograph, M.I.T. Press, 1963).

1 “shifted”, so that the last memory bit is discarded. For example, the new memory
2 bit s_1' could be computed by $s_1' = d_k + s_1 + s_2 + s_3 + s_4 \text{ modulo } 2$, and the other
3 memory bits would be $s_2' = s_1$, $s_3' = s_2$, and $s_4' = s_3$. What does “modulo 2” mean?
4 If the sum of the bits is even, then the sum modulo 2 is zero, whereas if the sum of
5 the bits is odd, then the sum modulo 2 is one. Note that s_4 has been discarded.
6 When an information bit is being processed, a parity bit is also generated. The
7 parity bit y_k is a combination of the new memory bit and the entire set of current
8 memory bits, for example, $y_k = s_1' + s_4 \text{ modulo } 2$. The combinations used to
9 determine the new memory bit and the parity bit need not include all of the bits,
10 e.g., the above example uses all bits to compute the new memory bit, but only s_1'
11 and s_4 when computing the parity bit. If a particular bit is used in a combination,
12 we say there is a “tap” connected to that bit. In the example, the parity bit is
13 connected by a tap to s_1' and another tap to s_4 . The set of taps for the memory bit
14 and the set of taps for the parity bit are fixed when processing information bits and
15 they completely characterize the convolutional code. In a “systematic”
16 convolutional code, the information bits are also transmitted across the channel, in
17 addition to the parity bits. Some parity bits and/or some information bits may be
18 punctured so as to adjust the rate of the convolutional code (the number of
19 information bits processed divided by the number of bits transmitted). If the new
20 memory bit doesn't have any taps to any memory bits, the code is called “non-
21 recursive” and otherwise it is called “recursive”, alluding to the fact that the new
22 memory bit depends on the bits in the old memory. Using the above example, the
23 figure below shows how a recursive convolutional code is depicted, where a circle
24 with a plus inside indicates summation *modulo* 2 and a box with a T inside
indicates a memory location (figure modified from ⁸).

⁸ Claude Berrou et al., *Near Shannon Limit Error-Correcting Coding and Decoding: Turbo Codes*, 2 IEEE International Conference on Communications, ICC '93 Geneva. Technical

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24



54. Convolutional codes are usually decoded using the “Viterbi algorithm” or the “BCJR algorithm”. These algorithms can be viewed as iterative “message passing” decoding algorithms, if we represent the convolutional code using a “Tanner graph” or a “factor graph”, as described below.

55. The main drawback of convolutional codes is that they only produce local redundancy in the output stream. They do not perform well when the channel introduces errors that are nearby. Turbo codes overcome this deficiency by encoding the input bits twice. The input bits are fed to a convolutional encoder in their normal order, and they are also reordered by an interleaver and the reordered bits are encoded by a second convolutional encoder. Using a turbo code, a small number of errors will not result in loss of information unless the errors happen to fall close together in both the original data stream and in the permuted data stream, which is unlikely.

56. A standard turbo coder encodes a sequence of information bits using two convolutional coders. The information bits are passed to the first convolutional coder in their original order. At the same time, a copy of the information bits

1 permuted by an interleaver is passed to the second convolutional coder. The figure
 2 below shows the structure of a typical turbocoder.⁹

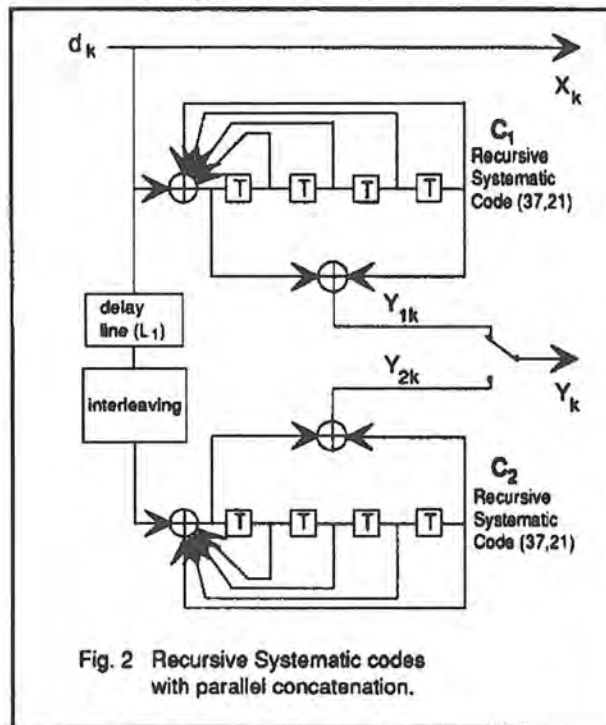


Fig. 2 Recursive Systematic codes with parallel concatenation.

15 57. In 1995, David J. C. MacKay rediscovered Gallager's work from 1963
 16 relating to low-density parity-check (LDPC) codes and demonstrated that they
 17 have performance comparable to that of turbocodes.¹⁰ Turbocodes and LDPC
 18 codes have some common characteristics: both codes use pseudo-random
 19 permutations to spread out redundancy, and both use iterative "message passing"
 20 decoding algorithms.

22 ⁹ Claude Berrou et al., *Near Shannon Limit Error-Correcting Coding and Decoding: Turbo Codes*, 2 IEEE International Conference on Communications, ICC '93 Geneva. Technical Program, Conference Record 1064 (1993); '032 patent, 1:29-56.

23 ¹⁰ MacKay, D. J. C., and Neal, R. M. "Near Shannon Limit Performance of Low Density Parity Check Codes," *Electronics Letters*, vol. 32, pp. 1645-1646 (1996).

1 58. In 1995 and 1996, researchers began to explore “concatenated”
2 convolutional codes.¹¹ While turbocodes use two convolutional coders connected
3 in parallel, concatenated convolutional codes use two convolutional coders
4 connected in series: the information bits are encoded by a first encoder, the output
5 of the first encoder is interleaved, and the interleaved sequence is encoded by a
6 second convolutional code. In such codes, the first and second encoders are often
7 called the “outer coder” and the “inner coder,” respectively.

8 59. In 1998, researchers developed “repeat-accumulate,” or “RA codes” by
9 simplifying the principles underlying turbocodes.¹² In RA codes, the information
10 bits are first passed to a repeater that repeats (*i.e.*, duplicates) the information bits
11 and outputs a stream of repeated bits (the encoder described above in the context of
12 the “repeat three” coding scheme is one example of a repeater). The repeated bits
13 are then passed through an interleaver, which scrambles their order, and then to an
14 accumulator, where they are “accumulated” to form the parity bits, which are
15 transmitted across the channel.

16 60. The accumulation operation is a running sum process whereby each input bit
17 is added to the previous input bits to produce a sequence of running sums, each of
18 which represents the sum of all input bits yet received. More formally, if an
19 accumulator receives a sequence of input bits $i_1, i_2, i_3, \dots, i_n$, it will produce output
20 bits $o_1, o_2, o_3, \dots, o_n$ such that:¹³

21
22 ¹¹ Benedetto, S. et al., *Serial Concatenation of Block and Convolutional Codes*, 32.10
23 Electronics Letters 887-888 (1996).

24 ¹² Divsalar, D. et al., “Coding Theorems for Turbo-like Codes,” *Proc. 36th Allerton Conf. on
Comm., Control and Computing*, 201 (Sept. 1998).

¹³ Here I use the \oplus symbol to denote modulo-2 addition.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

$$\begin{aligned}
o_1 &= i_1 \\
o_2 &= i_1 \oplus i_2 \\
o_3 &= i_1 \oplus i_2 \oplus i_3 \\
&\vdots \\
o_n &= i_1 \oplus i_2 \oplus i_3 \oplus \dots \oplus i_n
\end{aligned}$$

61. The accumulation operation can also be described as a recursive operation in which each output bit is the sum of the previous output bit and the current input bit:

$$\begin{aligned}
o_1 &= i_1 \\
o_2 &= o_1 \oplus i_2 \\
o_3 &= o_2 \oplus i_3 \\
&\vdots \\
o_n &= o_{n-1} \oplus i_n
\end{aligned}$$

62. As this recursive formulation shows, each accumulated bit can be calculated by performing a single modulo-2 addition operation. This relatively low computational complexity is one of the benefits of accumulate codes. In particular, it allows accumulate codes to be encoded quickly and cheaply.

63. Repetition and accumulation were well known in the art by May 18, 2000 and by March 7, 2000, the claimed priority date and the claimed conception date, respectively, of the patents-in-suit (*see, e.g.*, Wicker Dep. at 66:18-67:11, Jin Dep. at 67:8-23, 122:7-13).

E. Irregularity

64. A *regular code* is a systematic code that corresponds to a Tanner graph in which each information node is connected to the same number of check nodes, or a nonsystematic code that corresponds to a Tanner graph in which each parity node

1 is connected to the same number of check nodes.¹⁴ By contrast, an *irregular code*
2 is a systematic code that corresponds to a Tanner graph in which some information
3 nodes are connected to more check nodes than others, or a nonsystematic code that
4 corresponds to a Tanner graph in which some parity nodes are connected to more
5 check nodes than others. The concepts of *regular* and *irregular* need not be
6 expressed with reference to Tanner graphs, but it is convenient to do so.

65. Irregular LDPC codes were first introduced in a 1997 paper by Luby et al.¹⁵
7 The paper showed that irregular codes perform better than regular ones on certain
8 types of noisy channels. At the time, this paper was widely read by coding
9 theorists, and gave rise to several lines of research into irregular error-correcting
10 codes. For example, in my own paper titled “Irregular Turbocodes,” presented at
11 the 1999 Allerton Conference on Communications, Control, and Computing, I
12 applied the concept of irregularity to turbocodes by explaining how to construct
13 irregular turbocodes in which some information bits connect to more check nodes
14 than others. My experimental results demonstrated that these irregular turbocodes
15 perform better than the regular turbocodes that were known in the art.

16 66. By May 18, 2000 and by March 7, 2000, the claimed priority date and the
17 claimed conception date, respectively, of the patents-in-suit, it was known to those
18 with ordinary skill in the art that the performance of any type of error-correcting
19 code could be improved by adding irregularity (*see, e.g.*, Wicker Dep. at 232:6-
20 233:8). For example, on Dec. 8, 1999, I wrote to Dr. Divsalar, the lead author on
21 the paper “Coding Theorems for ‘Turbo-Like’ Codes” discussed in this report,
22 suggesting that the RA codes that he and Dr. Robert McEliece had been working
23 on should be made irregular (*see* CALTECH000024021).

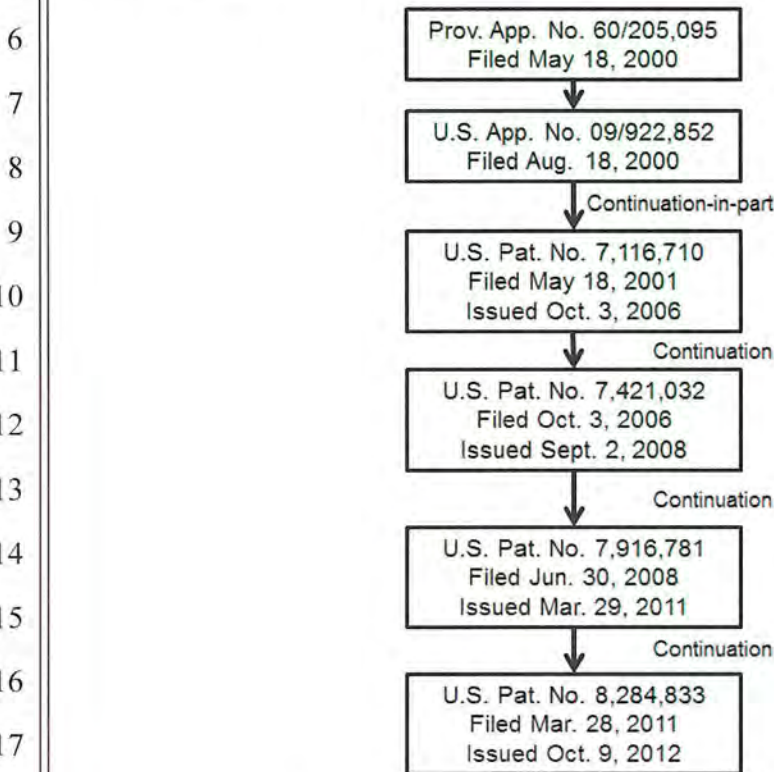
24 ¹⁴ For a more complete discussion of Tanner graphs, *see generally* Appendix A.

¹⁵ Luby, M. et al., “Practical Loss-Resilient Codes,” *STOC '97* (1997).

1 **III. THE PATENTS-IN-SUIT**

2 **A. Summary of the Specification.**

3 67. I have been informed that the patents-in-suit share a common specification
4 and that they were filed as a sequence of continuation applications as shown in the
5 diagram below.



18 68. The specification, which is common to the four patents-in-suit, is generally
19 directed to irregular RA codes (or “IRA” codes). Figure 2 of the specification,
20 reproduced below, shows the structure of an IRA encoder:

21
22
23
24

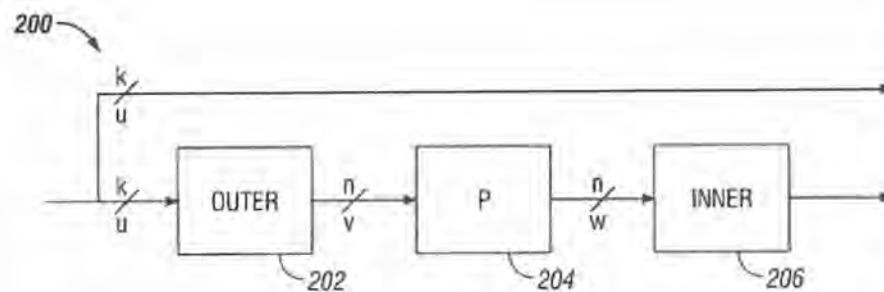


FIG. 2

69. Explaining this figure, the patents describe encoding data using an outer coder 202 connected to an inner coder 206 via an interleaver 204 (labeled “P”) (’710 patent at 2:33-40).

70. Outer coder 202 receives a block of information bits and duplicates each of the bits in the block a given number of times, producing a sequence of repeated bits at its output (*id.* at 2:50-52). The outer coder repeats bits irregularly – *i.e.*, it outputs more duplicates of some information bits than others (*id.* at 2:48-50).

71. The repeated bits are passed to an interleaver 204, where they are scrambled (*id.* at 3:18-22). The scrambled bits are then passed to the inner coder 206, where they are accumulated to form parity bits (*id.* at 2:65-67; 2:33-38). According to the specification:

Such an accumulator may be considered a block coder whose input block $[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ and output block $[y_1, \dots, y_n]$ are related by the formula

$$\begin{aligned}
 y_1 &= x_1 \\
 y_2 &= x_1 \oplus x_2 \\
 y_3 &= x_1 \oplus x_2 \oplus x_3 \\
 y_n &= x_1 \oplus x_2 \oplus x_3 \oplus \dots \oplus x_n
 \end{aligned}$$

(*id.* at 3:2-10).

72. The patent specification teaches both systematic and non-systematic codes. In a systematic code, the encoder outputs a copy of the information bits in addition

1 to the parity bits output by inner coder 206 (the systematic output is represented in
2 Fig. 2. as an arrow running toward the right along the top of the figure).

3 73. I discuss each of the patents individually below. However, I note here that
4 Caltech has characterized all four of the asserted patents as being directed to IRA
5 codes.¹⁶

6 **B. '710 Patent**

7 i) Claims

8 74. The '710 patent includes 33 claims, of which claims 1, 11, 15, and 25 are
9 independent. Independent claims 1 and 11 are directed to methods of encoding a
10 signal that include “first encoding” and “second encoding” steps. Independent
11 claim 15 is directed to a “coder” for encoding bits that includes a “first coder” and
12 a “second coder.” Claim 25 is directed to a “coding system” that also encodes bits
13 using a first and second coder, and further includes a decoder for decoding the
14 encoded bits. I understand that Caltech asserts claims 1, 4, 6, 15, 20, and 22 in this
15 case.

16 ii) Prosecution History

17 a) First Office Action: September 3, 2004

18 75. The patent office issued a first office action rejecting some of the claims
19 under 35 U.S.C. § 102 as anticipated by U.S. Patent No. 6,014,411 (to Wang) and
20 under 35 U.S.C. § 103 as obvious over Wang in view of Wiberg et al., “Codes and
21 Iterative Decoding on General Graphs,” *1995 Intl. Symposium on Information
22 Theory*, Sep. 1995, p. 506.

23 _____
24 ¹⁶ See, e.g., Plaintiff’s Technology Tutorial (Dkt. No. 85), p. 1 (which states that “[a]ll of the patents in suit relate to a novel error correction technique known as IRA codes”).

1 *b) Response: November 24, 2004*

2 76. In response, the applicant argued that the rejected claims are not anticipated
3 or obvious over the cited art because they all require that bits be repeated
4 “irregularly” or “a different number of times” during the first encoding step, while
5 Wang teaches repeating bits “the same number of times, i.e., regularly” (Response
6 dated Nov. 24, 2004 at 11).

7 *c) Second Office Action: March 4, 2005*

8 77. The patent office issued a second office action allowing some claims and
9 rejecting others. In particular, the examiner allowed claim 1 in response to the
10 applicant’s arguments. The examiner also rejected independent claims 15 and 24,
11 under 35 U.S.C. § 102 as anticipated by U.S. Patent No. 6,396,423 (to Laumen et
12 al.). The patent office also rejected several dependent claims under 35 U.S.C. §
13 103 as obvious over Laumen alone.

14 *d) Response: May 5, 2005*

15 78. In response, the applicant attempted to overcome the examiner’s rejections
16 by amending claims 15 and 24 to require that the second coder encode bits at a rate
17 “within 50% of one” (previously, the claims had recited a rate “close to one”)
18 (Response dated May 5, 2005 at 7-8). In the same amendment, the applicant added
19 new claims 32-35.

20 *e) Third Office Action: July 21, 2005*

21 79. The patent office issued a third office action maintaining its previous
22 rejections over Laumen, noting that Laumen teaches a transmission rate of 1/2, and
23 1/2 is “within 50% of one” (Office Action dated Jul. 21, 2005 at 4).

24 *f) Response: October 21, 2005*

80. To overcome the examiner’s rejection, the applicant canceled claims 32 and
34 and incorporated their subject matter into claims 15 and 24, respectively. As

1 amended, claims 15 and 24 require that the second coder encode bits at a rate
2 “within 10% of one” (Response dated Oct. 21, 2005 at 9).

3 **C. '032 Patent**

4 i) Claims

5 81. The '032 patent includes 23 claims, of which claims 1, 11, and 18 are
6 independent. Independent claim 1 is directed to a method that comprises
7 generating a sequence of parity bits from a collection of message bits in
8 accordance with particular mathematical formulae, and making the parity bits
9 available for transmission. Independent claim 11 is directed to an encoder that
10 generates a sequence of parity bits from a collection of message bits in accordance
11 with a particular Tanner Graph. Independent claim 18 is directed to a device for
12 decoding a data stream that has been encoded in accordance with the same Tanner
Graph. I understand that Caltech asserts claims 1, 18, 19, and 22 in this case.

13 ii) Prosecution History

14 a) First Office Action: September 6, 2007

15 82. The patent examiner initially allowed pending claims 1-17 and rejected
16 independent claim 18 and dependent claims 19-24 under 35 U.S.C. § 103 as
17 obvious over U.S. Patent No. 5,530,707 (to Lin) in view of U.S. Patent No.
18 6,859,906 (to Hammons et al.).

19 b) Response: Feb 4, 2008

20 83. To overcome the examiner's rejection, the applicant canceled claim 20 and
21 incorporated its subject matter into independent claim 18. The amendment further
22 limited claim 18 to require that the message passing decoder of claim 18 be
23 configured to decode a data stream that has been encoded in accordance with a
24 particular Tanner graph.

1 **D. '781 Patent**

2 i) Claims

3 84. The '781 patent includes 22 claims, of which claims 1, 13, 19, 20, and 21 are
4 independent. Independent claim 1 is directed to a two-step process for encoding a
5 signal, where the first encoding step involves a linear transform operation and the
6 second involves an accumulation operation. Independent claims 13 and 19 are
7 directed to methods of encoding a signal that generate codewords by summing
8 information bits and accumulating the resulting sums. Independent claims 20 and
9 21 are directed to methods that involve summing information bits and parity bits to
10 generate a portion of an encoded signal. I understand that Caltech asserts claims
11 16 and 19 in this case.

11 ii) Prosecution History

12 a) First Office Action: October 28, 2010

13 85. The patent examiner issued a first office action allowing some claims but
14 rejecting claims 13-17 and 20 as anticipated by U.S. Patent 5,181,207 (to Chapman,
15 et. al.) and requiring applicants to clarify the term “irregular,” as it appeared in
16 claims 9 and 23.

17 b) Response: January 27, 2011

18 86. To overcome the examiner’s rejection, the applicant canceled claim 21 and
19 incorporated its subject matter into independent claim 13. As amended, claim 13
20 requires that “the information bits appear in a variable number of subsets”
(Response dated Jan. 27, 2011 at 4).

21 87. In accompanying remarks, applicants disagreed with the examiner’s
22 statement that the term “irregular” was unclear, stating that “[i]t is believed that the
23 meaning of the term "irregular" in the claims is clear and is well known in the art of
24 computer coding technology” (*id.* at 7) (emphasis added). However, to overcome

1 the examiner's rejection, the applicant amended claims 9 and 23 to remove the
2 word "irregular," replacing it with the requirement that the information bits appear
3 "in a variable number of subsets" (*id.* at 3, 6).

4 **E. '833 Patent**

5 i) Claims

6 88. The '833 patent includes 14 claims, of which claims 1 and 8 are independent.
7 Independent claims 1 and 8 are directed to an apparatus and a method, respectively,
8 for encoding information bits that are stored in a first set of memory locations by
9 combining information bits with parity bits that are stored in a second set of
10 memory locations, and accumulating the bits in the second set of memory locations.
11 Both claims require that at least two of the first set of memory locations be read
12 "different times from one another."¹⁷ I understand that Caltech asserts claims 1, 2,
13 4, and 8 in this case.

14 ii) Prosecution History

15 89. After the examiner had allowed all pending claims in the application, the
16 applicant attempted to amend claims 1 and 8 as follows: "wherein a ~~total number~~
17 ~~of indices~~ two or more memory locations of the first set of memory locations are
18 read by the permutation module different times from one another ~~represents a~~
19 ~~variable number~~" (Amendment dated May 7, 2012).

20 90. The examiner did not enter these amendments after allowance because they
21 changed the scope of the claims that had already been allowed. The applicant
22 subsequently filed a request for continued examination, after which the examiner
23 allowed the claims as amended.

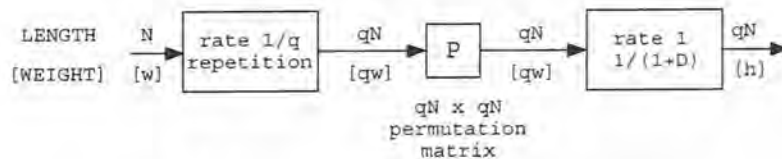
24 ¹⁷ As noted above, the parties have agreed that this claim term requires memory locations to be read a different *number* of times from one another.

1 **IV. SUMMARY OF THE PRIOR ART**

2 **A. Divsalar**

3 91. D. Divsalar, H. Jin, and R. J. McEliece, "Coding theorems for "turbo-like"
4 codes," *Proc. 36th Allerton Conf. on Comm., Control and Computing*, Allerton,
5 Illinois, pp. 201-210 ("Divsalar") was published in Sept. 1998, about 1.5 years
6 before the filing of the provisional application to which the patents-in-suit claim
7 priority, and I have been informed that Divsalar qualifies as prior art to all four of
8 the patents-in-suit.

9 92. Divsalar teaches "repeat and accumulate" codes, which it describes as "a
10 simple class of rate $1/q$ serially concatenated codes where the outer code is a q -fold
11 repetition code and the inner code is a rate 1 convolutional code with transfer
12 function $1/(1 + D)$ " (Divsalar at 1). Fig. 3 of Divsalar, reproduced below, shows
13 an encoder for a repeat-accumulate code with rate N/qN :



14
15
16 **Figure 3.** Encoder for a (qN, N) repeat and accumulate
17 code. The numbers above the input-output lines
18 indicate the length of the corresponding block,
19 and those below the lines indicate the weight of the block.

20 93. A block of N information bits enters the coder at the left side of the figure
21 and is provided to the repeater (labeled "rate $1/q$ repetition") (*see id.* at 5). The
22 repeater duplicates each of the N information bits q times and outputs the resulting
23 $N \times q$ repeated bits, which are then "scrambled by an interleaver of size qN " (*id.*,
24 referring to the box labeled "P"). The scrambled bits are "then encoded by a rate 1
accumulator" (*id.*, emphasis in original; *see also* Divsalar Tr. at pp. 59-63, 68-69).

94. Divsalar describes the accumulator as follows:

1 [W]e prefer to think of [the accumulator] as a block coder whose
2 input block $[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ and output block $[y_1, \dots, y_n]$ are related by
the formula

$$\begin{aligned}3 \quad & y_1 = x_1 \\4 \quad & y_2 = x_1 + x_2 \\& y_3 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \\& y_n = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \dots + x_n\end{aligned}$$

5 (*id.* at 5). The plus signs (“+”) in Divsalar’s formula represent modulo-2, or
6 exclusive-OR, addition (*see id.*; *see also* Divsalar Tr. 69:10-16).

7 95. Divsalar uses repeat-accumulate codes to prove a conjecture regarding the
8 interleaver gain exponent (IGE), which is a numerical parameter that estimates the
9 rate at which the word error rate decreases as the block length increases.

10 96. Divsalar further shows that RA codes have “very good” performance and
11 that they can be efficiently decoded using a “message passing decoding algorithm”
12 (*id.* at 9-10).

13 97. Divsalar teaches that turbocodes, serially concatenated convolutional codes
14 and RA codes can all be viewed as “turbo-like” codes: “We call these systems
15 “turbo-like” codes and they include as special cases both the classical turbo codes
16 and the serial concatenation of interleaved convolutional codes” (Divsalar
17 Abstract) and “In Section 5, we define a special class of turbo-like codes, the
18 repeat-and-accumulate codes, and prove the IGE conjecture for them” (Divsalar at
19 1). More specifically, RA codes can be viewed as turbocodes, in which the
20 information bits are punctured, or truncated, none of the parity bits are punctured,
21 and the convolutional code is an accumulator. “The accumulator can be viewed as
22 a truncated rate-1 recursive convolutional encoder with transfer function $1/(1 + D)$ ”
23 (Divsalar at 5). Divsalar also makes use of the fact that RA codes can be viewed as
24 turbocodes to explain the decoder: “But an important feature of turbo-like codes is
the availability of a simple iterative, message passing decoding algorithm that
approximates ML decoding. We wrote a computer program to implement this

1 'turbo-like' decoding for RA codes with $q = 3$ (rate 1/3) and $q = 4$ (rate 1/4), and
2 the results are shown in Figure 5" (Divsalar at 9).

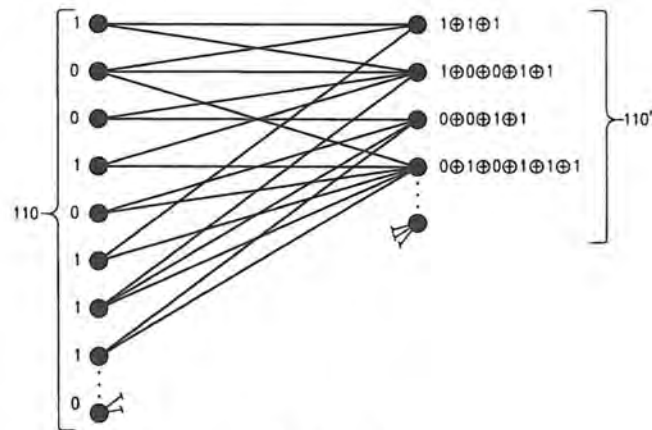
3 98. As explained further below, Divsalar teaches all but one aspect of an IRA
4 code: irregularity (the "I" in Irregular Repeat-Accumulate). That is, Divsalar
5 teaches regular repeat-accumulate (RA) codes rather than irregular repeat-
6 accumulate codes. A single modification to Divsalar – *i.e.*, changing the repeat to
7 being irregular instead of regular – would result in the IRA codes that Caltech
8 claims to have invented. I also explain below why it would have been obvious to
9 one of ordinary skill before the Caltech patents were filed (and before Caltech's
10 claimed conception date) to add irregularity to the repeat-accumulate codes of
11 Divsalar, resulting in the irregular repeat-accumulate codes to which the patents-in-
12 suit are directed.

12 **B. Luby**

13 99. U.S. Patent No. 6,081,909 to Luby et al. ("Luby"), titled "Irregularly
14 graphed encoding technique," was filed Nov. 6, 1997, about 2.5 years before the
15 filing of the provisional application to which the patents-in-suit claim priority, and
16 I have been informed that Luby qualifies as prior art to all four of the patents-in-
17 suit.

18 100. The Luby patent mirrors the teachings of Luby's seminal paper that I
19 described above, in which the concept of irregular error-correcting codes was first
20 introduced. Specifically, Luby teaches "a technique for creating loss resilient and
21 error correcting codes having irregular graphing between the message data and the
22 redundant data" (Luby at 1:5-10). "Irregular graphing" refers to codes with Tanner
23 graphs in which some information nodes are connected to more check nodes than
24 others (*see, e.g., id.* at 3:27-29, stating that "different numbers of first edges are
associated with the data items").

1 101. A Tanner graph corresponding to an irregular code is shown in Fig. 17 of
 2 Luby, reproduced below:



3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10 **FIG. 17**

11 102. In this figure, the circles on the left represent information bits to be encoded
 12 and the circles on the right represent parity checks computed for these information
 13 bits. Each parity check on the right is computed by summing together (modulo 2)
 14 all of the information bits connected to that parity check by an edge in the graph
 15 (*see id.* at 17:64-67).¹⁸

16 103. As the figure shows, some information nodes on the left contribute to three
 17 parity checks on the right, while others contribute to two (*i.e.*, all nodes on the left
 18 which are connected to two lines, such as the top node, contribute to two parity
 19 checks and all nodes on the left which are connected to three lines, such as the
 20 second node from the top, contribute to three parity checks). An encoding scheme
 21 with a Tanner graph in which some information nodes are connected to more check
 22 nodes than others is the defining characteristic of an irregular code.

23
24 ¹⁸ I explain what an “edge” is in this context in Appendix A, below.

1 **C. MacKay**

2 104. D. J. C. MacKay, S. T. Wilson, and M. C. Davey, "Comparison of
3 constructions of irregular Gallager codes," *IEEE Trans. Commun.*, Vol. 47, No. 10,
4 pp. 1449-1454 ("MacKay") was published in Oct. 1999, about six months before
5 the filing of the provisional application to which the patents-in-suit claim priority,
6 and I have been informed that MacKay qualifies as prior art to all four of the
7 patents-in-suit.

8 105. MacKay is motivated by "[t]he excellent performance of irregular Gallager
9 codes," and explores "ways of further enhancing these codes" (MacKay at 1459).
10 In particular, MacKay investigates the constructions of both regular and irregular
11 Gallager codes with encoding algorithms that have low computational complexity.

12 **D. Ping**

13 106. L. Ping, W. K. Leung, N. Phamdo, "Low Density Parity Check Codes with
14 Semi-random Parity Check Matrix." *Electron. Letters*, Vol. 35, No. 1, pp. 38-39
15 ("Ping") was published in Jan. 1999, more than a year before the filing of the
16 provisional application to which the patents-in-suit claim priority, and I have been
17 informed that Ping qualifies as prior art to all four of the patents-in-suit.

18 107. Ping teaches constructing LDPC codes that can be encoded in two stages. In
19 the first encoding stage, a generator matrix is applied to a sequence of information
20 bits to produce sums of information bits. In the second stage, the sums of
21 information bits are accumulated recursively to generate the parity bits (*see* Ping at
22 38).

23 108. Ping's code can be described as an LDPC code with two components: an
24 outer coder that is an LDGM coder followed by an inner coder that is an

1 accumulator. Thus Ping teaches LDPC codes that are also accumulate codes.¹⁹ I
2 understand that the codes Caltech has accused of infringement, *i.e.*, the DVB-S2
3 codes, can also be encoded using LDPC + accumulate coders. One difference
4 between Ping and the accused codes is that Ping's LDPC code is regular whereas
5 in the accused DVB-S2 codes, the LDPC code is irregular. As explained below, it
6 was obvious before Caltech's alleged invention to make codes irregular, e.g.,
7 because it was known that doing so would improve their performance. In
8 particular, it was obvious before Caltech's alleged invention to make Ping's LDPC
9 code irregular. Therefore, if Caltech establishes that its claims cover the accused
10 DVB-S2 codes, then those claims would be invalid in view of Ping and the art that
11 rendered it obvious to make Ping's LDPC code irregular, e.g. Luby, MacKay and
12 Frey99.

13 **E. Frey99**

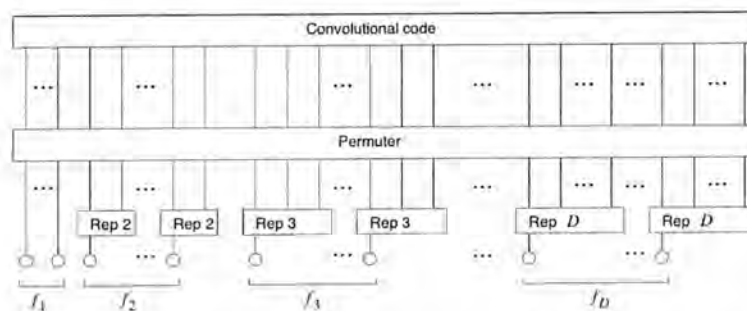
14 109. Frey, B. J. and MacKay, D. J. C., "Irregular Turbocodes," *Proc. 37th*
15 *Allerton Conf. on Comm., Control and Computing*, Monticello, Illinois ("Frey99")
16 was published on or before March 20, 2000, which is before the filing of the
17 provisional application to which the patents-in-suit claim priority, and I have been
18 informed that Frey99 qualifies as prior art to all four of the patents-in-suit.

19 110. Frey99 is a paper that I wrote in collaboration with David MacKay. In
20 Frey99, David MacKay and I applied the concept of irregularity to turbocodes by
21 explaining how to construct irregular turbocodes, *i.e.*, turbocodes with Tanner
22 graphs in which some information nodes are connected to more check nodes than
23 others. Our experimental results demonstrated that these irregular turbocodes
24 perform better than the regular turbocodes that were known in the art.

¹⁹ Below I refer to these codes as "LDPC + accumulate" codes.

1 111. As I explain in Frey99, “an *irregular turbocode* has the form shown in Fig. 2,
 2 which is a type ‘trellis-constrained code’ as described in [7]. We specify a *degree*
 3 *profile*, $f_d \in [0, 1]$, $d \in \{1, 2, \dots, D\}$. f_d is the fraction of codeword bits that have
 4 degree d and D is the maximum degree. Each codeword bit with degree d^{20} is
 5 repeated d times before being fed into the permuter. Several classes of permuter
 6 lead to linear-time encodable codes. In particular, if the bits in the convolutional
 7 code are partitioned into ‘systematic bits’ and ‘parity bits’, then by connecting each
 8 parity bit to a degree 1 codeword bit, we can encode in linear time” (Frey99 at 2).

8 112. As this passage explains, the irregular turbocodes I described in Frey99
 9 operate by irregularly repeating the information bits, interleaving the repeated bits
 10 using a “permute” (*i.e.*, an interleaver), and encoding the permuted bits using a
 11 convolutional code. Figure 2 of Frey99, reproduced below, illustrates such an
 12 irregular turbocode:



18 Figure 2: A general *irregular turbocode*. For $d = 1, \dots, D$, fraction f_d of the codeword
 19 bits are repeated d times, permuted and connected to a convolutional code.

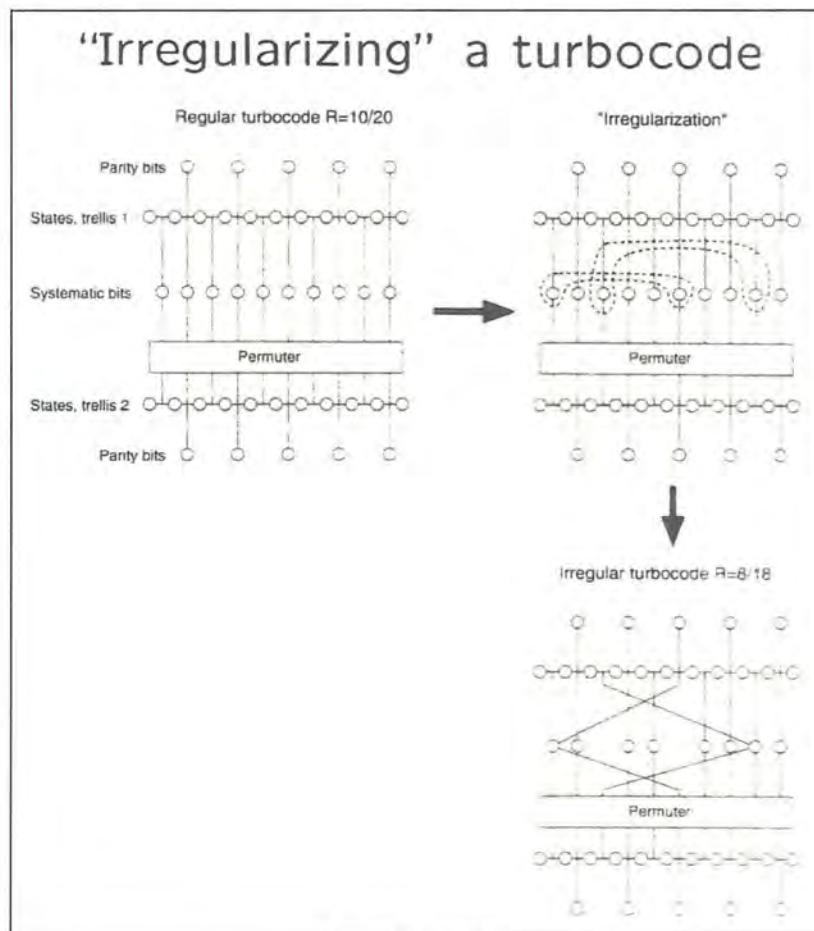
20 113. In this figure, bits in the subset f_1 are not repeated, bits in the subset f_2 are
 21 repeated twice, bits in the subset f_3 are repeated three times, and bits in the subset
 22 f_D are repeated D times.

23 _____
 24 ²⁰ A bit with “degree d ” is a bit that contributes to d parity check bits. In Frey99, bits of degree d
 are repeated d times prior to permutation.

1 **F. Frey Slides**

2 114. I prepared the Frey Slides (titled “Irregular Turbo-Like Codes”) in
3 collaboration with David MacKay and presented them at the Allerton Conference
4 in September, 1999. The Frey Slides contain the material upon which the Frey99
5 paper, published in the Allerton 1999 conference proceedings, is based.

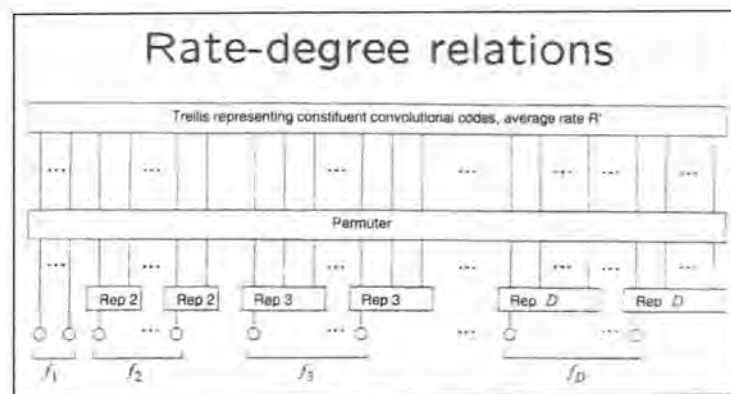
6 115. In particular, the Frey Slides describe how irregularity can improve code
7 performance and introduce the concept of irregular turbocodes. Using the same
8 procedure described in the Frey99 paper, the Frey Slides show how known, regular
9 turbocodes can be “irregularized,” step by step:



21 **Frey Slides at 4**

1 In the figure above, a regular turbocode (upper left) is “irregularized” by tying
2 information nodes together (upper right), thereby raising their degree, resulting in
3 an irregular turbocode (lower right).

4 116. Also, using a diagram identical to Figure 2 of Frey99 (described above) the
5 Frey Slides show how irregular turbocodes can be implemented via irregular
6 repetition:



7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
Frey Slides at 5

117. The Frey Slides also describe selection of degree profiles (*see id.* at 6) and provide details regarding the rate of the resulting convolutional coder and the overall rate of the irregular turbocode (*id.* at 5-8, 13).

118. I understand that Caltech has alleged a date of invention of March 7, 2000. I further understand that Caltech may argue that the Frey99 paper was not published until after its alleged invention date. In the event that the Court finds that the patents-in-suit are entitled to a date of invention that predates the publication of Frey99, and the Frey99 paper is deemed not to be prior art to the patents-in-suit, then the Frey Slides may be substituted for the Frey99 paper in all of the positions explained below. For the purposes of the invalidity opinions set forth in this report, the teachings of Frey99 and the Frey Slides are interchangeable. To illustrate how the Frey Slides may be substituted for Frey99, wherever I cite to Frey99 in the

1 report below, I have also included citations to the corresponding teachings in the
2 Frey Slides.

3 **G. RA.c**

4 119. Source code file "RA.c," dated September 28, 1998, was written by David
5 MacKay at the University of California at San Francisco.

6 120. The RA.c source code implements a "[r]epeat-accumulate code simulator."
7 The file includes a function called "RA_encode" that performs a repeat-accumulate
8 encoding operation.

9 121. The operation of RA.c is described in a comment at the beginning of the
10 source code file:

```
11      /*  
12         RA.c  
13         (c) DJCM 98 09 28  
14  
15         Repeat-accumulate code simulator  
16  
17         read in code definition  
18         loop {  
19             encode source string  
20             add noise  
21             decode  
22         }  
23  
24         Code definition: (stored in "alist")  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99  
100  
101  
102  
103  
104  
105  
106  
107  
108  
109  
110  
111  
112  
113  
114  
115  
116  
117  
118  
119  
120  
121  
122  
123  
124  
125  
126  
127  
128  
129  
130  
131  
132  
133  
134  
135  
136  
137  
138  
139  
140  
141  
142  
143  
144  
145  
146  
147  
148  
149  
150  
151  
152  
153  
154  
155  
156  
157  
158  
159  
160  
161  
162  
163  
164  
165  
166  
167  
168  
169  
170  
171  
172  
173  
174  
175  
176  
177  
178  
179  
180  
181  
182  
183  
184  
185  
186  
187  
188  
189  
190  
191  
192  
193  
194  
195  
196  
197  
198  
199  
200  
201  
202  
203  
204  
205  
206  
207  
208  
209  
210  
211  
212  
213  
214  
215  
216  
217  
218  
219  
220  
221  
222  
223  
224  
225  
226  
227  
228  
229  
230  
231  
232  
233  
234  
235  
236  
237  
238  
239  
240  
241  
242  
243  
244  
245  
246  
247  
248  
249  
250  
251  
252  
253  
254  
255  
256  
257  
258  
259  
260  
261  
262  
263  
264  
265  
266  
267  
268  
269  
270  
271  
272  
273  
274  
275  
276  
277  
278  
279  
280  
281  
282  
283  
284  
285  
286  
287  
288  
289  
290  
291  
292  
293  
294  
295  
296  
297  
298  
299  
300  
301  
302  
303  
304  
305  
306  
307  
308  
309  
310  
311  
312  
313  
314  
315  
316  
317  
318  
319  
320  
321  
322  
323  
324  
325  
326  
327  
328  
329  
330  
331  
332  
333  
334  
335  
336  
337  
338  
339  
340  
341  
342  
343  
344  
345  
346  
347  
348  
349  
350  
351  
352  
353  
354  
355  
356  
357  
358  
359  
360  
361  
362  
363  
364  
365  
366  
367  
368  
369  
370  
371  
372  
373  
374  
375  
376  
377  
378  
379  
380  
381  
382  
383  
384  
385  
386  
387  
388  
389  
390  
391  
392  
393  
394  
395  
396  
397  
398  
399  
400  
401  
402  
403  
404  
405  
406  
407  
408  
409  
410  
411  
412  
413  
414  
415  
416  
417  
418  
419  
420  
421  
422  
423  
424  
425  
426  
427  
428  
429  
430  
431  
432  
433  
434  
435  
436  
437  
438  
439  
440  
441  
442  
443  
444  
445  
446  
447  
448  
449  
450  
451  
452  
453  
454  
455  
456  
457  
458  
459  
460  
461  
462  
463  
464  
465  
466  
467  
468  
469  
470  
471  
472  
473  
474  
475  
476  
477  
478  
479  
480  
481  
482  
483  
484  
485  
486  
487  
488  
489  
490  
491  
492  
493  
494  
495  
496  
497  
498  
499  
500  
501  
502  
503  
504  
505  
506  
507  
508  
509  
510  
511  
512  
513  
514  
515  
516  
517  
518  
519  
520  
521  
522  
523  
524  
525  
526  
527  
528  
529  
530  
531  
532  
533  
534  
535  
536  
537  
538  
539  
540  
541  
542  
543  
544  
545  
546  
547  
548  
549  
550  
551  
552  
553  
554  
555  
556  
557  
558  
559  
560  
561  
562  
563  
564  
565  
566  
567  
568  
569  
570  
571  
572  
573  
574  
575  
576  
577  
578  
579  
580  
581  
582  
583  
584  
585  
586  
587  
588  
589  
590  
591  
592  
593  
594  
595  
596  
597  
598  
599  
600  
601  
602  
603  
604  
605  
606  
607  
608  
609  
610  
611  
612  
613  
614  
615  
616  
617  
618  
619  
620  
621  
622  
623  
624  
625  
626  
627  
628  
629  
630  
631  
632  
633  
634  
635  
636  
637  
638  
639  
640  
641  
642  
643  
644  
645  
646  
647  
648  
649  
650  
651  
652  
653  
654  
655  
656  
657  
658  
659  
660  
661  
662  
663  
664  
665  
666  
667  
668  
669  
670  
671  
672  
673  
674  
675  
676  
677  
678  
679  
680  
681  
682  
683  
684  
685  
686  
687  
688  
689  
690  
691  
692  
693  
694  
695  
696  
697  
698  
699  
700  
701  
702  
703  
704  
705  
706  
707  
708  
709  
710  
711  
712  
713  
714  
715  
716  
717  
718  
719  
720  
721  
722  
723  
724  
725  
726  
727  
728  
729  
730  
731  
732  
733  
734  
735  
736  
737  
738  
739  
740  
741  
742  
743  
744  
745  
746  
747  
748  
749  
750  
751  
752  
753  
754  
755  
756  
757  
758  
759  
760  
761  
762  
763  
764  
765  
766  
767  
768  
769  
770  
771  
772  
773  
774  
775  
776  
777  
778  
779  
780  
781  
782  
783  
784  
785  
786  
787  
788  
789  
790  
791  
792  
793  
794  
795  
796  
797  
798  
799  
800  
801  
802  
803  
804  
805  
806  
807  
808  
809  
810  
811  
812  
813  
814  
815  
816  
817  
818  
819  
820  
821  
822  
823  
824  
825  
826  
827  
828  
829  
830  
831  
832  
833  
834  
835  
836  
837  
838  
839  
840  
841  
842  
843  
844  
845  
846  
847  
848  
849  
850  
851  
852  
853  
854  
855  
856  
857  
858  
859  
860  
861  
862  
863  
864  
865  
866  
867  
868  
869  
870  
871  
872  
873  
874  
875  
876  
877  
878  
879  
880  
881  
882  
883  
884  
885  
886  
887  
888  
889  
890  
891  
892  
893  
894  
895  
896  
897  
898  
899  
900  
901  
902  
903  
904  
905  
906  
907  
908  
909  
910  
911  
912  
913  
914  
915  
916  
917  
918  
919  
920  
921  
922  
923  
924  
925  
926  
927  
928  
929  
930  
931  
932  
933  
934  
935  
936  
937  
938  
939  
940  
941  
942  
943  
944  
945  
946  
947  
948  
949  
950  
951  
952  
953  
954  
955  
956  
957  
958  
959  
960  
961  
962  
963  
964  
965  
966  
967  
968  
969  
970  
971  
972  
973  
974  
975  
976  
977  
978  
979  
980  
981  
982  
983  
984  
985  
986  
987  
988  
989  
990  
991  
992  
993  
994  
995  
996  
997  
998  
999  
1000  
1001  
1002  
1003  
1004  
1005  
1006  
1007  
1008  
1009  
1010  
1011  
1012  
1013  
1014  
1015  
1016  
1017  
1018  
1019  
1020  
1021  
1022  
1023  
1024  
1025  
1026  
1027  
1028  
1029  
1030  
1031  
1032  
1033  
1034  
1035  
1036  
1037  
1038  
1039  
1040  
1041  
1042  
1043  
1044  
1045  
1046  
1047  
1048  
1049  
1050  
1051  
1052  
1053  
1054  
1055  
1056  
1057  
1058  
1059  
1060  
1061  
1062  
1063  
1064  
1065  
1066  
1067  
1068  
1069  
1070  
1071  
1072  
1073  
1074  
1075  
1076  
1077  
1078  
1079  
1080  
1081  
1082  
1083  
1084  
1085  
1086  
1087  
1088  
1089  
1090  
1091  
1092  
1093  
1094  
1095  
1096  
1097  
1098  
1099  
1100  
1101  
1102  
1103  
1104  
1105  
1106  
1107  
1108  
1109  
1110  
1111  
1112  
1113  
1114  
1115  
1116  
1117  
1118  
1119  
1120  
1121  
1122  
1123  
1124  
1125  
1126  
1127  
1128  
1129  
1130  
1131  
1132  
1133  
1134  
1135  
1136  
1137  
1138  
1139  
1140  
1141  
1142  
1143  
1144  
1145  
1146  
1147  
1148  
1149  
1150  
1151  
1152  
1153  
1154  
1155  
1156  
1157  
1158  
1159  
1160  
1161  
1162  
1163  
1164  
1165  
1166  
1167  
1168  
1169  
1170  
1171  
1172  
1173  
1174  
1175  
1176  
1177  
1178  
1179  
1180  
1181  
1182  
1183  
1184  
1185  
1186  
1187  
1188  
1189  
1190  
1191  
1192  
1193  
1194  
1195  
1196  
1197  
1198  
1199  
1200  
1201  
1202  
1203  
1204  
1205  
1206  
1207  
1208  
1209  
1210  
1211  
1212  
1213  
1214  
1215  
1216  
1217  
1218  
1219  
1220  
1221  
1222  
1223  
1224  
1225  
1226  
1227  
1228  
1229  
1230  
1231  
1232  
1233  
1234  
1235  
1236  
1237  
1238  
1239  
1240  
1241  
1242  
1243  
1244  
1245  
1246  
1247  
1248  
1249  
1250  
1251  
1252  
1253  
1254  
1255  
1256  
1257  
1258  
1259  
1260  
1261  
1262  
1263  
1264  
1265  
1266  
1267  
1268  
1269  
1270  
1271  
1272  
1273  
1274  
1275  
1276  
1277  
1278  
1279  
1280  
1281  
1282  
1283  
1284  
1285  
1286  
1287  
1288  
1289  
1290  
1291  
1292  
1293  
1294  
1295  
1296  
1297  
1298  
1299  
1300  
1301  
1302  
1303  
1304  
1305  
1306  
1307  
1308  
1309  
1310  
1311  
1312  
1313  
1314  
1315  
1316  
1317  
1318  
1319  
1320  
1321  
1322  
1323  
1324  
1325  
1326  
1327  
1328  
1329  
1330  
1331  
1332  
1333  
1334  
1335  
1336  
1337  
1338  
1339  
1340  
1341  
1342  
1343  
1344  
1345  
1346  
1347  
1348  
1349  
1350  
1351  
1352  
1353  
1354  
1355  
1356  
1357  
1358  
1359  
1360  
1361  
1362  
1363  
1364  
1365  
1366  
1367  
1368  
1369  
1370  
1371  
1372  
1373  
1374  
1375  
1376  
1377  
1378  
1379  
1380  
1381  
1382  
1383  
1384  
1385  
1386  
1387  
1388  
1389  
1390  
1391  
1392  
1393  
1394  
1395  
1396  
1397  
1398  
1399  
1400  
1401  
1402  
1403  
1404  
1405  
1406  
1407  
1408  
1409  
1410  
1411  
1412  
1413  
1414  
1415  
1416  
1417  
1418  
1419  
1420  
1421  
1422  
1423  
1424  
1425  
1426  
1427  
1428  
1429  
1430  
1431  
1432  
1433  
1434  
1435  
1436  
1437  
1438  
1439  
1440  
1441  
1442  
1443  
1444  
1445  
1446  
1447  
1448  
1449  
1450  
1451  
1452  
1453  
1454  
1455  
1456  
1457  
1458  
1459  
1460  
1461  
1462  
1463  
1464  
1465  
1466  
1467  
1468  
1469  
1470  
1471  
1472  
1473  
1474  
1475  
1476  
1477  
1478  
1479  
1480  
1481  
1482  
1483  
1484  
1485  
1486  
1487  
1488  
1489  
1490  
1491  
1492  
1493  
1494  
1495  
1496  
1497  
1498  
1499  
1500  
1501  
1502  
1503  
1504  
1505  
1506  
1507  
1508  
1509  
1510  
1511  
1512  
1513  
1514  
1515  
1516  
1517  
1518  
1519  
1520  
1521  
1522  
1523  
1524  
1525  
1526  
1527  
1528  
1529  
1530  
1531  
1532  
1533  
1534  
1535  
1536  
1537  
1538  
1539  
1540  
1541  
1542  
1543  
1544  
1545  
1546  
1547  
1548  
1549  
1550  
1551  
1552  
1553  
1554  
1555  
1556  
1557  
1558  
1559  
1560  
1561  
1562  
1563  
1564  
1565  
1566  
1567  
1568  
1569  
1570  
1571  
1572  
1573  
1574  
1575  
1576  
1577  
1578  
1579  
1580  
1581  
1582  
1583  
1584  
1585  
1586  
1587  
1588  
1589  
1590  
1591  
1592  
1593  
1594  
1595  
1596  
1597  
1598  
1599  
1600  
1601  
1602  
1603  
1604  
1605  
1606  
1607  
1608  
1609  
1610  
1611  
1612  
1613  
1614  
1615  
1616  
1617  
1618  
1619  
1620  
1621  
1622  
1623  
1624  
1625  
1626  
1627  
1628  
1629  
1630  
1631  
1632  
1633  
1634  
1635  
1636  
1637  
1638  
1639  
1640  
1641  
1642  
1643  
1644  
1645  
1646  
1647  
1648  
1649  
1650  
1651  
1652  
1653  
1654  
1655  
1656  
1657  
1658  
1659  
1660  
1661  
1662  
1663  
1664  
1665  
1666  
1667  
1668  
1669  
1670  
1671  
1672  
1673  
1674  
1675  
1676  
1677  
1678  
1679  
1680  
1681  
1682  
1683  
1684  
1685  
1686  
1687  
1688  
1689  
1690  
1691  
1692  
1693  
1694  
1695  
1696  
1697  
1698  
1699  
1700  
1701  
1702  
1703  
1704  
1705  
1706  
1707  
1708  
1709  
1710  
1711  
1712  
1713  
1714  
1715  
1716  
1717  
1718  
1719  
1720  
1721  
1722  
1723  
1724  
1725  
1726  
1727  
1728  
1729  
1730  
1731  
1732  
1733  
1734  
1735  
1736  
1737  
1738  
1739  
1740  
1741  
1742  
1743  
1744  
1745  
1746  
1747  
1748  
1749  
1750  
1751  
1752  
1753  
1754  
1755  
1756  
1757  
1758  
1759  
1760  
1761  
1762  
1763  
1764  
1765  
1766  
1767  
1768  
1769  
1770  
1771  
1772  
1773  
1774  
1775  
1776  
1777  
1778  
1779  
1780  
1781  
1782  
1783  
1784  
1785  
1786  
1787  
1788  
1789  
1790  
1791  
1792  
1793  
1794  
1795  
1796  
1797  
1798  
1799  
1800  
1801  
1802  
1803  
1804  
1805  
1806  
1807  
1808  
1809  
1810  
1811  
1812  
1813  
1814  
1815  
1816  
1817  
1818  
1819  
1820  
1821  
1822  
1823  
1824  
1825  
1826  
1827  
1828  
1829  
1830  
1831  
1832  
1833  
1834  
1835  
1836  
1837  
1838  
1839  
1840  
1841  
1842  
1843  
1844  
1845  
1846  
1847  
1848  
1849  
1850  
1851  
1852  
1853  
1854  
1855  
1856  
1857  
1858  
1859  
1860  
1861  
1862  
1863  
1864  
1865  
1866  
1867  
1868  
1869  
1870  
1871  
1872  
1873  
1874  
1875  
1876  
1877  
1878  
1879  
1880  
1881  
1882  
1883  
1884  
1885  
1886  
1887  
1888  
1889  
1890  
1891  
1892  
1893  
1894  
1895  
1896  
1897  
1898  
1899  
1900  
1901  
1902  
1903  
1904  
1905  
1906  
1907  
1908  
1909  
1910  
1911  
1912  
1913  
1914  
1915  
1916  
1917  
1918  
1919  
1920  
1921  
1922  
1923  
1924  
1925  
1926  
1927  
1928  
1929  
1930  
1931  
1932  
1933  
1934  
1935  
1936  
1937  
1938  
1939  
1940  
1941  
1942  
1943  
1944  
1945  
1946  
1947  
1948  
1949  
1950  
1951  
1952  
1953  
1954  
1955  
1956  
1957  
1958  
1959  
1960  
1961  
1962  
1963  
1964  
1965  
1966  
1967  
1968  
1969  
1970  
1971  
1972  
1973  
1974  
1975  
1976  
1977  
1978  
1979  
1980  
1981  
1982  
1983  
1984  
1985  
1986  
1987  
1988  
1989  
1990  
1991  
1992  
1993  
1994  
1995  
1996  
1997  
1998  
1999  
2000  
2001  
2002  
2003  
2004  
2005  
2006  
2007  
2008  
2009  
2010  
2011  
2012  
2013  
2014  
2015  
2016  
2017  
2018  
2019  
2020  
2021  
2022  
2023  
2024  
2025  
2026  
2027  
2028  
2029  
2030  
2031  
2032  
2033  
2034  
2035  
2036  
2037  
2038  
2039  
2040  
2041  
2042  
2043  
2044  
2045  
2046  
2047  
2048  
2049  
2050  
2051  
2052  
2053  
2054  
2055  
2056  
2057  
2058  
2059  
2060  
2061  
2062  
2063  
2064  
2065  
2066  
2067  
2068  
2069  
2070  
2071  
2072  
2073  
2074  
2075  
2076  
2077  
2078  
2079  
2080  
2081  
2082  
2083  
2084  
2085  
2086  
2087  
2088  
2089  
2090  
2091  
2092  
2093  
2094  
2095  
2096  
2097  
2098  
2099  
2100  
2101  
2102  
2103  
2104  
2105  
2106  
2107  
2108  
2109  
2110  
2111  
2112  
2113  
2114  
2115  
2116  
2117  
2118  
2119  
2120  
2121  
2122  
2123  
2124  
2125  
2126  
2127  
2128  
2129  
2130  
2131  
2132  
2133  
2134  
2135  
2136  
2137  
2138  
2139  
2140  
2141  
2142  
2143  
2144  
2145  
2146  
2147  
2148  
2149  
2150  
2151  
2152  
2153  
2154  
2155  
2156  
2157  
2158  
2159  
2160  
2161  
2162  
2163  
2164  
2165  
2166  
2167  
2168  
2169  
2170  
2171  
2172  
2173  
2174  
2175  
2176  
2177  
2178  
2179  
2180  
2181  
2182  
2183  
2184  
2185  
2186  

```


1 more than 1.5 years before the alleged conception date of the patents-in-suit,
2 explicitly teaches irregular repeat-accumulate codes.

3 **H. '999 Patent**

4 123. U.S. Patent No. 4,623,999 to Patterson et al. (hereinafter, the "'999 patent"),
5 was filed on June 4, 1984, more than 15 years before the filing date of the
6 provisional application to which the patents-in-suit claim priority, and I have been
7 informed that the '999 patent qualifies as prior art to all four of the patents-in-suit.

8 124. The '999 patent teaches an encoder for encoding information bits using a
9 linear error-correcting code. The encoder taught by the '999 patent uses a plurality
10 of memories that store values used during the encoding process ('999 patent at
11 Abstract, describing "[a]n efficient look-up table encoder for encoding k bit
12 information words with linear error correcting block codes is provided comprising
13 a plurality of read-only **memories** ...") (emphasis added). The teachings of
14 the '999 patent illustrate that the use of memories to implement error-correcting
15 coders was known in the art for decades prior to the claimed priority date of the
16 patents-in-suit.

16 **I. Accused Hughes Products**

17 125. As I explain below, the earliest priority date to which the claims of the '833
18 patent could be entitled is March 28, 2011, the date those claims were first filed.

19 126. I have been informed that a number of the accused products in this case were
20 sold by Defendants prior to March 28, 2011. If the claims of the '833 patent are
21 entitled to a priority date of March 28, 2011, these accused products would qualify
22 as prior art to the claims of the '833 patent.

22 **V. SUMMARY OF ANTICIPATION AND OBVIOUSNESS OPINIONS**

23 127. As I explain in detail below, the asserted claims are either anticipated by or
24 obvious over the prior art references described above. Broadly speaking, the

1 claimed codes represent the combination of RA codes, which were generally
2 known by those of ordinary skill in the art by March 7, 2000, with irregularity,
3 which had been shown years before to improve the performance of codes like RA
4 codes.

5 128. One of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to combine these
6 two ideas. RA codes are described in detail in Divsalar, published more than a
7 year before the alleged conception date of the patents-in-suit. The concept of
8 irregularity had been introduced by Luby in 1997, and by March 7, 2000 had been
9 thoroughly explored in a number of papers and publications, including Frey99,
10 MacKay, and the Luby '909 patent, discussed below (in particular, Frey99 teaches
11 irregular *repetition*, which is specifically required by some of the asserted claims).
12 By March 7, 2000, both RA codes and irregularity would have been common
13 knowledge to one of ordinary skill in the art.

14 129. Indeed, prior to March 7, I myself suggested incorporating irregularity into
15 RA codes. In particular, as described below, I suggested in an email to Dariush
16 Divsalar that he make his RA codes irregular (*See* Email from Brendan Frey to
17 Dariush Divsalar dated Dec. 8, 1999 (CALTECH000024021)). Consistent with the
18 email I sent to Dr. Divsalar, making RA codes irregular was merely an obvious
19 application of my earlier work on irregular turbocodes, which I presented at the
20 Allerton 1999 conference, 6 months before Caltech's alleged conception date of
21 March 7, 2000, and which is described in Frey99 and the Frey Slides.

22 130. I explain these opinions in further detail below, with reference to each
23 limitation of the various claims that have been asserted by Caltech.

24 **VI. THE ASSERTED CLAIMS OF THE '710 PATENT ARE INVALID**

131. As I explain below, asserted claims 1, 4, 6, 15, 20, and 22 of the '710 patent
are invalid. I also explain why claims 3, 5, and 21, from which claims 4, 6, and 22

1 depend, respectively, are invalid. A summary of the opinions set forth in this
 2 section is given in the table below:

'710 Claim	Frey99 (or Frey slides)	Frey99 (or Frey slides) + Divsalar	Divsalar + Luby	Divsalar + MacKay
1	Anticipated	Anticipated by Frey or Obvious	Obvious	Obvious
3	Anticipated	Anticipated by Frey or Obvious	Obvious	Obvious
4		Obvious	Obvious	Obvious
5		Obvious	Obvious	Obvious
6		Obvious	Obvious	Obvious
15		Obvious	Obvious	Obvious
20		Obvious	Obvious	Obvious
21		Obvious	Obvious	Obvious
22		Obvious	Obvious	Obvious

11 **A. Claim 1 of the '710 Patent is Invalid**

12 132. Claim 1 of the '710 patent reads:

- 13 1. A method of encoding a signal, comprising:
 14 obtaining a block of data in the signal to be encoded;
 15 partitioning said data block into a plurality of sub-blocks, each
 16 sub-block including a plurality of data elements;
 17 first encoding the data block to form²¹ a first encoded data block,
 18 said first encoding including repeating the data elements in
 19 different sub-blocks a different number of times;
 20 interleaving the repeated data elements in the first encoded data
 21 block; and
 22 second encoding said first encoded data block using an encoder
 that has a rate close to one.

23 i) Claim 1 of the '710 Patent is Anticipated by Frey99

24 133. I explain below, one limitation at a time, why claim 1 is anticipated by Frey99.

²¹ I note that the word "from" here should be "form." That is, this limitation is about forming "a first encoded data block." Notwithstanding that typographical error, I have reproduced the claim as it is printed in the patent.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

a) "A method of encoding a signal"

134. Even if the preamble limits the claim, it is taught by Frey99. As I explain above, Frey99 deals with the construction of irregular turbocodes. The purpose of the disclosed irregular turbocode is for the encoding and decoding of signals (see also, Frey Slides at 4). Frey99 explicitly discloses decoding signals that had been encoded using the disclosed irregular turbocode. See, e.g., Frey99 at 4 ("**After receiving the channel output, the decoder computes** the channel output log-likelihood ratios ...") (emphasis added); 4 ("In our simulations, after each iteration, we check to see if the current decision gives a codeword. If it does, the iterations terminate and otherwise, **the decoder iterates further** ...") (emphasis added); 6 ("Fig. 4 shows the simulated BER- E_b/N_0 curves for the original block length $N=131,072$ regular turbocode (dashed line) and its irregular cousin (solid line), using profile $e = 10$, $f_e = 0.05$ "); see also, Frey Slides at 2 ("making decoding easier"); Frey Slides at 9, 11, 12 (showing BER- E_b/N_0 curves).

b) "obtaining a block of data in the signal to be encoded"

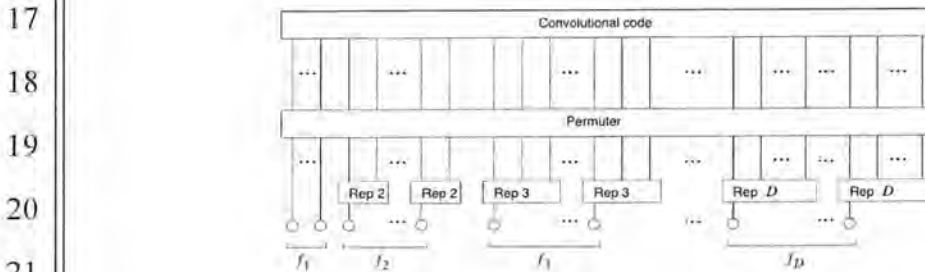
135. Frey99 deals exclusively with block codes. For example, Frey99 includes experimental results comparing a regular code and an irregular code, both having "block length $N = 131,082$ " (Frey99 at 6; see also Frey Slides at 13, teaching "long block lengths," and "short block lengths"). Frey99's use and discussion of that block length means that Frey99 takes bits in blocks of 131,082 and encodes them, just as is required by this claim limitation. Similarly, Frey99 also includes other discussion of obtaining data in blocks for encoding. For example, Frey99 describes experimental results relating to, e.g., the "block length" of irregular turbocodes. In selecting a coding profile, Frey99 teaches "making small changes to a block length $N = 10,000$ version of the original rate $R = 1/2$ turbocode proposed by Berrou *et al.*" (Frey99 at 5) (emphasis added). Also, Frey99 uses the "BER" or "block error rate" to compare the performance of various codes (see, e.g.,

1 Frey99 at Figure 4). Frey99's reference to "block error rate" means that Frey99
2 obtains data in blocks for encoding.

3 c) "partitioning said data block into a plurality of sub-blocks, each
4 sub-block including a plurality of data elements"

5 136. Frey99 teaches this limitation. Frey99 describes irregular turbocodes as
6 follows: "an *irregular turbocode* has the form shown in Fig. 2, which is a type
7 'trellis-constrained code' as described in [7]. We specify a *degree profile*, $f_d \in [0,$
8 $1], d \in \{1, 2, \dots, D\}$. f_d is the fraction of codeword bits that have degree d and D
9 is the maximum degree. Each codeword bit with degree d is repeated d times
10 before being fed into the permuter. Several classes of permuter lead to linear-time
11 encodable codes. In particular, if the bits in the convolutional code are partitioned
12 into 'systematic bits' and 'parity bits', then by connecting each parity bit to a
13 degree 1 codeword bit, we can encode in linear time." Frey99 at 2 (emphasis
14 added).

15 137. As described above, Frey99 partitions the information bits into groups,
16 where the bits in each group all have the same degree (i.e., they are all repeated the
17 same number of times). Frey99 also illustrates this operation graphically in Figure
18 2, reproduced below:



22 Figure 2: A general *irregular turbocode*. For $d = 1, \dots, D$, fraction f_d of the codeword
23 bits are repeated d times, permuted and connected to a convolutional code.

24

1 138. In Figure 2 of Frey99, the circles at the bottom represent information bits.
2 The groups of information bits labeled f_2, f_3, \dots, f_D represent sub-blocks into which
3 the data block is partitioned (*see also* Frey Slides at 5).

4 139. Thus, the bits that are repeated twice (the bits labeled f_2) constitute one sub-
5 block, the bits that are repeated three times (the bits labeled f_3) constitute a second
6 sub-block, and so on. As shown in Figure 2 of Frey99, each of these sub-blocks
7 contains a plurality of bits (or “data elements”), as required by claim 1 of the ’710
8 patent.

9 d) “first encoding the data block to from [sic] a first encoded data
10 block, said first encoding including repeating the data elements
11 in different sub-blocks a different number of times”

12 140. Frey99 teaches repeating the data elements in different sub-blocks a
13 different number of times (which is commonly known as “irregular repetition” to
14 those of ordinary skill in in the art).

15 141. For example, Figure 2 of Frey99, reproduced above, shows that the data
16 elements in each sub-block are repeated a different number of times. In Figure 2
17 of Frey99, the circles at the bottom represent information bits in the data block.
18 The groups of information bits labeled f_2, f_3, \dots, f_D represent sub-blocks into which
19 the data block is partitioned. The blocks labeled “Rep 2,” “Rep 3,” and “Rep D”
20 represent the step of repetition. For example, an information bit that is connected
21 to a box labeled “Rep 2” is repeated twice, a bit connected to a box labeled “Rep 3”
22 is repeated three times, etc.. In the figure above, the repeated bits are represented
23 by the vertical lines connecting the “Rep n ” boxes to the box labeled “Permuter”
24 (*see also* Frey Slides at 5).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

e) “interleaving the repeated data elements in the first encoded data block”

142. Frey99 teaches this limitation. As I explain above, Frey99 teaches codes in which “Each codeword bit with degree d is repeated d times before being fed into the permuter” (Frey99 at 2; *see also* Frey99, Figures 1 and 2). Figure 1 of Frey99 illustrates how “a turbocode can be viewed as a code that copies the systematic bits, permutes both sets of these bits and then feeds them into a convolutional code” (Frey99 at 3) (emphasis added). *See also* Frey Slides at 4, 5 (showing copies of systematic bits fed into a “Permuter” block).

143. “Permuting” means “interleaving,” and a “permuter” is an “interleaver,” as both parties have agreed in their Joint Claim Construction Statement (construing both “interleaver” and “permutation module” to mean “module that changes the order of data elements”). Permuting/interleaving bits means changing the order of the bits. The permuter in Figure 2 of Frey99 receives the repeated bits (produced by the blocks labeled “Rep 1,” “Rep 2,” ..., and “Rep D ”) and interleaves them (*see also* Frey Slides at 5; *see also* Divsalar Tr. at 278:2-23).

f) “second encoding said first encoded data block using an encoder that has a rate close to one”

144. Frey99 teaches this limitation. The “second encoding” taught by Frey99 is a convolutional encoder, which accepts irregularly repeated and permuted bits as input and encodes these bits to produce parity bits, as shown in Figure 2, reproduced below (*see also* Frey Slides at 5):

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

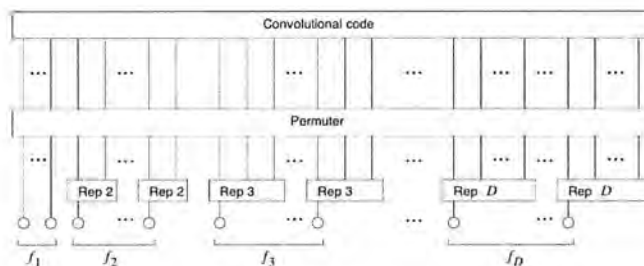


Figure 2: A general irregular turboencoder. For $d = 1, \dots, D$, fraction f_d of the codeword bits are repeated d times, permuted and connected to a convolutional code.

145. Frey99 teaches a convolutional coder “with the required convolutional code rate of $R' = 2/3$ ” (Frey99 at 5). A code with a rate of $2/3$ has a rate “close to one,” as required by this limitation. Indeed, during prosecution of the '710 patent, the Applicant attempted to overcome a prior art rejection by replacing “a rate close to one” with “a rate within 50% of one,” in issued claim 15 (Response dated May 5, 2005 at 7-8). A code with rate $2/3$ clearly has a rate “within 50% of one,” and Applicant’s amendment suggests that “a rate close to one” is even broader.

146. However, Frey99 also teaches second encoders with a rate even closer to one. Repetition increases the number of bits input to the convolutional encoder, but the number of bits sent across the channel can be decreased by “puncturing.” Frey99 teaches “it is clear that when the average degree is increased, the rate of the convolutional code must also be increased to keep the overall rate at $1/2$ ” (Frey99 at 5). Recall from above that the rate of an encoder is equal to the ratio between the number of bits input to the encoder and the total number of bits output by the encoder. A convolutional coder with rate $2/3$ outputs three bits for every two bits of input. Puncturing the convolutional code lowers the number of output bits, reducing the denominator of the ratio and thus raising the rate of the code.

147. Specifically, Frey99 teaches puncturing the convolutional code to obtain a convolutional code with rate:

$$R' = 1 - \frac{1 - R}{d} = 1 - \frac{1/2}{1/2 + 2(1/2 - f_e) + e f_e}$$

(Frey99 at 5).

148. This equation includes two variables, e , and f_e . Frey99 presents results that “show that for $e = 10$, $f_e = 0.05$ is a good fraction, and that for $f_e = 0.05$, $e = 10$ is a good degree” (Frey99 at 5). Plugging the values $e = 10$ and $f_e = 0.05$ into the equation above, we obtain:

$$R' = 1 - \frac{\frac{1}{2}}{\frac{1}{2} + 2\left(\frac{1}{2} - f_e\right) + e \cdot f_e} = \frac{1.4}{1.9} \approx \mathbf{0.74}$$

149. One of ordinary skill in the art would recognize that a rate of 0.74 is a rate “close to one.” See also Frey Slides at 6 (showing equation for convolutional code rate); Frey Slides at 7 (showing “ $d_e = 10$ ”); Frey Slides at 8 (showing “ $f_e = .05$ ”), leading to the same rate $R' = 0.74$.

g) Summary

150. As explained above, Frey99 teaches every limitation of claim 1 and therefore anticipates claim 1.

ii) Claim 1 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Frey99 In View of Divsalar

151. As explained above, in my opinion, Frey99 teaches every limitation of, and therefore anticipates, claim 1 of the '710 patent. However, in the event Frey99 is found not to teach the “rate close to one” limitation of claim 1, then claim 1 is obvious over the combination of Frey99 and Divsalar.

152. Specifically, I explain later in this section that Divsalar teaches a second encoding step using an encoder with a rate “close to one.” Also, as I explain below, one of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to combine Divsalar and

1 Frey99 in general, and would specifically have been motivated to use the
 2 accumulator of Divsalar in the irregular turbo codes of Frey99. Finally, I explain
 3 why such a combination would represent a minor modification to the teachings of
 4 Frey99, and would not fundamentally change its principle of operation.

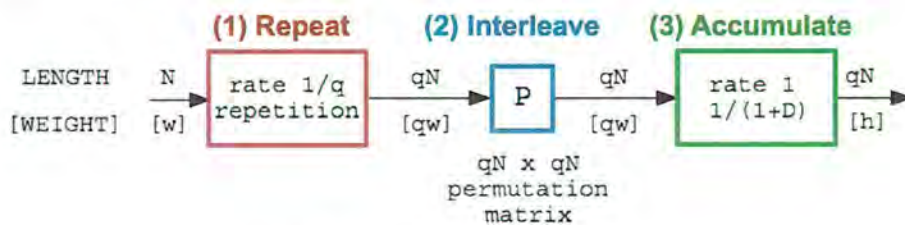
5 a) The accumulator of Divsalar has “a rate close to one”

6 153. If the rate of the second encoder taught by Frey99 were found to not be
 7 “close to one,” as required by the final limitation of claim 1, it would have been
 8 obvious to substitute Divsalar’s rate-1 accumulator for Frey’s convolutional code.
 9 In such a combination, the code rate of the second encoder would be exactly one,
 10 which would satisfy the “close to one” requirement.

11 154. As explained above, Divsalar teaches an RA code that uses three steps:

- 12 (1) **repeat** bits q times;
- 13 (2) **interleave** the repeated bits (with the block labeled “P” in Figure 3); and
- 14 (3) **accumulate** the repeated-interleaved bits with the *rate 1* accumulator.

15 Each of these steps is represented by a block in Figure 3, reproduced below.



16 **Divsalar, Figure 3 (annotated)**

17 155. Divsalar explains the accumulate step as follows:

18 [W]e prefer to think of [the accumulator] as a block coder whose
 19 input block $[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ and output block $[y_1, \dots, y_n]$ are related by
 20 the formula

$$\begin{aligned}
 21 \quad & y_1 = x_1 \\
 22 \quad & y_2 = x_1 + x_2 \\
 23 \quad & y_3 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \\
 24 \quad & y_n = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \dots + x_n
 \end{aligned}$$

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

(Divsalar at 5)

156. An encoder that outputs n bits (*i.e.*, “output block $[y_1, \dots, y_n]$ ”) for every n bits of input (*i.e.*, “input block $[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ ”) has a rate of $n/n = 1$. Thus, the “second encoder” taught by Divsalar has a rate of exactly 1 (and it is described in Fig. 3 of Divsalar as a “rate 1” encoder). Divsalar’s accumulator therefore teaches exactly the second encoding step of claim 1 of the ’710 patent.²²

b) Motivations to combine the teachings of Frey99 with those of Divsalar, generally

157. Frey99 and Divsalar are both directed to the same field, namely, the field of error-correcting codes. Further, Frey99 and Divsalar are both related to variations on turbo codes. Frey99 is directed to irregular turbo codes (*see, e.g.*, Frey99 at 2, “[i]n this paper, we show that by tweaking a turbocode so that it is irregular, we obtain a coding gain ...”; *see also* Frey Slides at 4, titled “Irregularizing” a turbocode). Divsalar is related to “turbo-like codes” (*see, e.g.*, Divsalar at 2, “In Section 3 we define the class of *‘turbo-like’* codes In Section 4 we state a conjecture ... about the ML decoder performance of *turbo-like* codes. In Section 5, we define a special class of *turbo-like* codes ...”) (emphasis added).²³ Also, as explained above, Divsalar teaches that the accumulator is a “truncated rate-1 recursive convolutional encoder with transfer function $1/(1 + D)$ ” (Divsalar at 5). Therefore, one of ordinary skill would have been aware of both references and would have considered them to disclose components that could be substituted for one another.

²² As confirmed by the testimony of Hui Jin, one of the inventors listed on the patents-in-suit (*see* Jin Tr. at 122).
²³ The “turbo-like” codes described by Divsalar include both classical turbo codes and concatenated codes (*see* Divsalar at Abstract). Thus, every turbo code is a “turbo-like code,” as that term is used in Divsalar.

1 c) Specific motivations to use Divsalar's accumulator in Frey99

2 158. Frey99's second encoder is implemented using a convolutional code.

3 Divsalar's second encoder is implemented using an accumulator. Accumulation is
4 a particular type of convolutional code that is simpler than the convolutional code
5 used in Frey99 (*see, e.g.*, Divsalar Tr. at 279-280). Therefore, one of ordinary skill
6 would have been motivated to substitute Divsalar's accumulator for Frey99's
7 convolutional code at least for the following reasons.

8 159. First, using Divsalar's accumulator in place of Frey99's convolutional code
9 would result in an encoder that was easier to implement in hardware, used fewer
10 transistors and required fewer computations to produce the encoded codewords.

11 As explained above, accumulation allows calculating each successive parity bit
12 using a single modulo-2 addition operation. One of ordinary skill would have thus
13 been motivated to simplify Frey99's code by replacing the convolutional coder
14 with Divsalar's accumulator – an even simpler convolutional coder.

15 160. Second, converting Frey99's convolutional code into Divsalar's accumulator
16 would result in a simpler code that would have been easier to analyze analytically.
17 Divsalar's original motivation for producing the RA code was to produce a code
18 that would be easy to analyze analytically. For example, the section of Divsalar
19 that introduces RA codes begins: “[i]n this section we will introduce a class of
20 turbo-like codes which are simple enough so that we can prove the IGE conjecture.
21 We call these codes repeat and accumulate (RA) codes” (Divsalar at 5) (emphasis
22 added). Indeed, Divsalar attempted to prove the IGE conjecture for more
23 complicated coding schemes (*see id.* at 1, “[u]nfortunately, the difficulty of the
24 first step ... has kept us from full success, except for **some very simple coding**
25 **systems, which we call repeat and accumulate codes**”) (emphasis added). One of
26 ordinary skill would have been similarly motivated to simplify other codes in order
27 to make them easier to study; one such simplification that would have been

1 obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art would be replacing Frey99's
2 convolutional coder with Divsalar's relatively less complex accumulator.

3 161. Also, convolutional coders and accumulators are related. That is,
4 accumulation is a simple form of convolutional coding.²⁴ One of ordinary skill
5 would recognize an accumulator as a simple form of convolutional coder. Divsalar
6 teaches: "The accumulator can be viewed as a truncated rate-1 recursive
7 convolutional encoder with transfer function $1/(1 + D)$ " (Divsalar at 5). Thus, if
8 one of ordinary skill wanted to simplify the convolutional coder taught in Frey99,
9 e.g., for the reasons given above, an accumulator would have been a logical choice
10 because it would be a simple form of the convolutional coder explicitly disclosed
11 in Frey99.

12 162. Further, using Divsalar's accumulator in place of the convolutional encoder
13 explicitly taught in Frey99 would have been a routine substitution of one
14 component for another and the resulting combination would have performed as
15 expected.

16 163. Finally, my own presentation at the Allerton Conference in September 1999
17 taught that making a turbocode irregular would improve its performance. Below, I
18 provide additional evidence that it would be obvious to a person of ordinary skill in
19 the art that the RA code of Divsalar is a simple convolutional code and that it could
20 be made irregular. The email below was sent to Dariush Divsalar by myself on
21 December 8, 1999, nearly three months before the claimed date of conception of
22 the patents-in-suit. The email mentions my paper on irregular turbocodes (Frey99)
23 and Dariush Divsalar and Robert McEliece's work on RA codes (Divsalar), and
24 further goes on to mention combining the two pieces of work.

²⁴ Divsalar described his accumulator as a convolutional code (Divsalar at 1 ("...and the inner code is a rate 1 convolutional code...")).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

CALTECH000024021
From: Brendan Frey
Sent: Wed 12/08/1999
To: <Dariush.Divsalar@jpl.nasa.gov>
Cc: <frey@dendrite.uwaterloo.ca>
Bcc:
Subject:

Hi, Dariush.

I'd like to get back to work on the irregular turbocodes and win some world records. Have you had a chance to look through the Allerton paper? Do you think JPL would be interested in irregular turbocodes. Have you heard back from Fabrizio about the possibility of me doing some consulting work at JPL?

Regardless, it would interesting to extend the work that you and Bob have done to the case of irregular turbocodes.

On another subject, are you planning to submit a paper to the IEEE trans IT special issue, "Codes on Graphs and Iterative Algorithms"?

Brendan.

PS: What's the latest on what went wrong with the Mars lander? I hope it isn't being blamed on the communication system...

Email from Dr. Frey to Dr. Divsalar (CALTECH000024021)

164. Other similarities between Divsalar and Frey99 further motivate the combination

165. As I explain in this section, Divsalar teaches not only the “rate close to one” limitation, but also most of the remaining limitations of claim 1 of the '710 patent. The similarity and combinability of Frey99 and Divsalar is evidenced by the number of claim limitations they both teach.

i. “A method of encoding a signal”

166. To the extent that the preamble is determined to be a limitation of the claim, it is taught by Divsalar. Divsalar describes a “turbo-like” code called a repeat-accumulate code. The purpose of the disclosed repeat-accumulate code is for the encoding and decoding of signals. Divsalar explicitly discloses decoding signals that had been encoded using the disclosed repeat-accumulate code. *See, e.g.,* Divsalar at 2 (“Finally, in Section 6 we present performance curves for some RA codes, using an iterative, turbo-like, decoding algorithm. This performance is seen

1 to be remarkably good, despite the simplicity of the codes and the suboptimality of
2 the decoding algorithm”); 9 (“Figure 4. Comparing the RA code ‘cutoff threshold’
3 to the cutoff rate of random codes using both the classical union bound and the
4 Viterbi-Viterbi improved union bound.”).

5 ii. “obtaining a block of data in the signal to be encoded”

6 167. Divsalar deals exclusively with block codes. The repeat-accumulate codes
7 introduced by Divsalar are encoded by receiving an “input block” or “information
8 block of length N ” and passing the block to the repeater (Divsalar at 5). *See also,*
9 for example, Figure 3, reproduced above.

10 iii. “first encoding the data block to form a first encoded data
11 block, said first encoding including repeating the data
12 elements in different sub-blocks”

13 168. Divsalar teaches a first encoding step that includes repeating information
14 bits, as shown in Figure 3, reproduced above.

15 169. A block of N information bits enters the coder at the left side of the figure
16 and is provided to the repeater (labeled “rate $1/q$ repetition”) (Divsalar at 5). The
17 repeater duplicates each of the N information bits q times and outputs the resulting
18 $N \times q$ repeated bits (*id.*).

19 170. While Divsalar does not teach partitioning the data block into a plurality of
20 sub-blocks and repeating information bits in in different sub-blocks “a different
21 number of times” (*i.e.*, irregular repetition), these limitations are taught by Frey99,
22 as explained above.²⁵

23 ²⁵ Note that the “partitioning” and the “different number of times” limitations of claim 1 are
24 related. Any coding scheme that repeats different information bits different numbers of times
(such as that taught in Frey99) will *de facto* partition information bits into sub-blocks (*i.e.*, with
bits in one sub-block being repeated one number of times and with bits in another sub-block
being repeated a different number of times).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

iv. “interleaving the repeated data elements in the first encoded data block”

171. Divsalar teaches this limitation. Figure 3 of Divsalar, reproduced above, shows a “permutation matrix” (the box labeled “P”). After the repeater duplicates each of the N information bits q times and outputs $N \times q$ repeated bits, the repeated bits are “scrambled by an interleaver of size qN ” (Divsalar at 5).

v. Summary

172. As explained above, claim 1 of the '710 patent is obvious in view of the combination of Frey99 and Divsalar. In particular, it would have been obvious to use Divsalar’s accumulator in place of the convolutional encoder disclosed in Frey99.

iii) Claim 1 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Divsalar in View of One of MacKay or Luby

173. I explain below, limitation by limitation, why claim 1 is rendered obvious by a combination of Divsalar and either MacKay or Luby. As noted above, Divsalar teaches all but one feature of the IRA codes that Caltech claims to have invented. That is, Divsalar teaches *regular* repeat-accumulate codes instead of *irregular* repeat-accumulate codes. Adding one feature, irregularity, to Divsalar results in the claimed IRA codes. As explained below, it would have been obvious to combine the teachings of Divsalar with the irregularity taught in either of Luby or MacKay.

174. In this section I describe how Divsalar teaches the remaining limitations of claim 1 of the '710 patent (*i.e.*, the limitations unrelated to irregularity). I also explain that any limitation not taught by Divsalar is taught by both Luby and MacKay. Also, as I explain below, one of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to combine Divsalar and Luby or MacKay in general, and would specifically have been motivated to incorporate the one necessary feature from

1 Luby or MacKay – irregularity – forming a combination that meets every
2 limitation of claim 1 of the '710 patent. Finally, I explain why such a combination
3 would only represent a minor modification to the teachings of Divsalar, and would
4 not fundamentally change its principle of operation or purpose.

5 a) Divsalar teaches every limitation of Claim 1 except irregularity

6 175. As I explain above (with respect to the combination of Frey99 and Divsalar),
7 Divsalar teaches:

- 8 • “A method of encoding a signal;”
- 9 • “obtaining a block of data in the signal to be encoded;”
- 10 • “first encoding the data block to form a first encoded data block, said first
11 encoding including repeating;”
- 12 • “interleaving the repeated data elements in the first encoded data block;” and
- 13 • “second encoding said first encoded data block using an encoder that has a
14 rate close to one.”

15 176. The only portions of the claim that Divsalar fails to teach are: “partitioning
16 said data block into a plurality of sub-blocks, each sub-block including a plurality
17 of data elements” (I will call this the “partitioning” limitation); and “said first
18 encoding including repeating the data elements in different sub-blocks a different
19 number of times” (which I will call the “irregularity” limitation).

20 b) Both Luby and MacKay Teach the Partitioning and Irregularity
21 Limitations

22 177. One of ordinary skill would have needed to incorporate only one feature
23 from Luby or MacKay into Divsalar – irregularity – to form a combination that
24 meets every limitation of claim 1 of the '710 patent. Below, I explain why one of
ordinary skill would have been motivated to combine the teachings of Divsalar
with the irregularity taught in both Luby and MacKay.

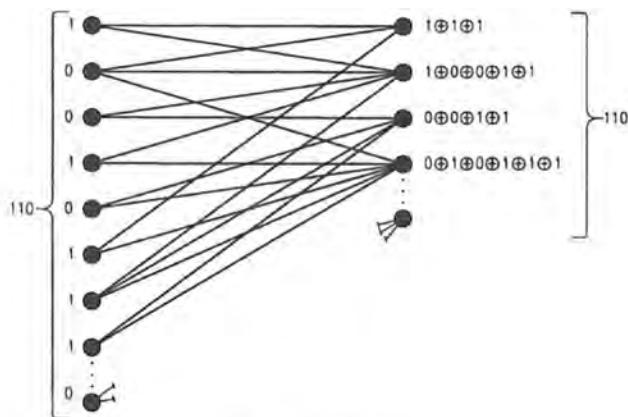
1 178. As I explain above, the partitioning limitation and the irregularity limitation
2 are related: by repeating different information bits different numbers of times, a
3 coding scheme *de facto* partitions information bits into sub-blocks. However, for
4 the sake of clarity, I will discuss both limitations individually in the remainder of
5 this subsection.

- 6 i. “partitioning said data block into a plurality of sub-blocks,
7 each sub-block including a plurality of data elements”

8 179. Because Divsalar’s repetition is regular instead of irregular, Divsalar does
9 not partition the blocks into sub-blocks for purposes of repetition. However, as
10 part of their general teaching of irregularity, both Luby and MacKay teach
11 partitioning the blocks into sub-blocks.

12 180. Luby teaches that sparse graph codes can be improved by using “irregular
13 graphing” (*see, e.g.*, Luby at 11:23-49). The “irregular graphing” encoder used by
14 Luby “partition[s] said data block into a plurality of sub-blocks, each sub-block
15 including a plurality of elements.”

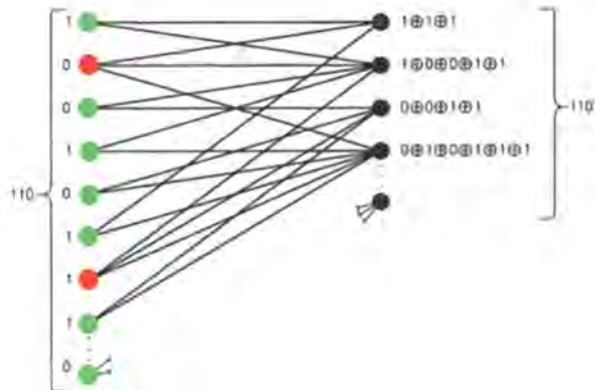
16 181. This process is represented graphically in Figure 17 of Luby, reproduced
17 below:



18 **FIG. 17**

1 182. In this figure, the filled circles on the left represent information bits to be
 2 encoded, and the filled circles on the right represent parity checks computed for
 3 these information bits. In the above figure, each parity check on the right is
 4 computed by summing together (modulo 2) all of the information bits connected to
 5 that parity check by an edge in the graph (*see, e.g.*, Luby at 17:64-67, “[t]he
 6 redundant data items associated with nodes at the layer 110’ are computed by an
 7 exclusive-or operation of the message bits to which they are connected”).

8 183. As shown above, some information bits are connected to two parity checks
 9 (*i.e.*, have a degree of two) and other information bits are connected to three parity
 10 checks (*i.e.*, have a degree of three). Luby “partition[s] said data block into a
 11 plurality of sub-blocks, each sub-block including a plurality of elements” by
 12 assigning a first group of two or more input bits a first degree (*e.g.*, two) and a
 13 second group of input bits a second degree (*e.g.*, three). In this scheme, the input
 14 bits with a degree of two constitute one sub-block (shown below in green) and the
 15 input bits with a degree of three constitute a second sub-block (shown below in
 16 red):



17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
FIG. 17

1 184. Each of the sub-blocks includes at least two input bits, as shown in the
2 colored figure above.

3 185. MacKay also teaches this limitation. MacKay builds on the earlier work of
4 Luby to examine the properties of certain irregular Gallager codes (*see, e.g.,*
5 MacKay at 1449). Like Luby, MacKay describes assigning different degrees to
6 different bits: “We can define an irregular Gallager code in two steps. First, we
7 select a *profile* that describes the desired number of columns of each weight and
8 the desired number of rows of each weight. The parity check matrix of a code can
9 be viewed as defining a bipartite graph with ‘bit’ vertices corresponding to the
10 columns and ‘check’ vertices corresponding to the rows. Each nonzero entry in the
11 matrix corresponds to an edge connecting a bit to a check. The profile specifies
12 the degrees of the vertices in this graph.” (MacKay at 1449-1450).

12 186. As the passage above explains, in the parity-check matrices taught by
13 MacKay, each information bit corresponds to a particular column, where the
14 weight of that column (*i.e.*, the number of 1s contained in that column of the
15 parity-check matrix) represents the degree of the information bit.²⁶ MacKay also
16 teaches systematic codes that use constructions of parity check matrices where
17 some columns correspond to information bits and other columns correspond to
18 parity bits.

18 187. As shown in Table 1 of MacKay, reproduced below, the irregular code with
19 “Profile 93” partitions the information blocks into two sub-blocks: one sub-block
20 having degree 3 and the other having degree 9:

21 _____
22 ²⁶ In general, depending on how the matrix is represented, a particular information bit can
23 correspond to either a row or a column of the generator matrix. That is, if the vector of
24 information bits is multiplied by the generator matrix on the right (denoted vG), then each
information bit will correspond to a row of the generator matrix. Conversely, if the vector of
information bits is multiplied by the generator matrix on the left (denoted Gv), then each
information bit will correspond to a column of the generator matrix.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

TABLE I
THE TWO PROFILES STUDIED IN THIS PAPER

Profile 3	Column weight	Fraction of columns	Row weight	Fraction
	3	1	6	1
Profile 93	Column weight	Fraction of columns	Row weight	Fraction
	3	11/12	7	1
	9	1/12		

(MacKay at 1451)

As the table above indicates, $1/12^{\text{th}}$ of the information bits in “Profile 93” have degree 9, and the remaining $11/12^{\text{th}}$ s of information bits have degree 3. Because the parity check matrices taught by MacKay have many more than 12 columns (*see id.*, showing “blocklength about $N = 10\ 000$ ”), each of these sub-blocks contains a plurality of bits, or data elements.

- ii. “... repeating the data elements in different sub-blocks a different number of times”

188. As I explain above, Divsalar teaches repeating information bits. As shown in Figure 3, a block of N information bits enters the coder at the left side of the figure and is provided to the repeater (labeled “rate $1/q$ repetition”) (Divsalar at 5). The repeater duplicates each of the N information bits q times and outputs the resulting $N \times q$ repeated bits (*id.*).

189. While Divsalar does not teach repeating data elements in different sub-blocks a different number of times (*i.e.*, “irregular” repetition), one of ordinary skill in the art would have known to combine the repetition of Divsalar with the irregularity of Luby or MacKay.

190. As I explain above, Luby teaches that sparse graph codes can be improved by using “irregular graphing” (*see, e.g.*, Luby at 11:23-49). “Irregular graphing” refers to codes with Tanner graphs in which some information nodes are connected to more check nodes than others (*see, e.g., id.* at 3:27-29, stating that “different numbers of first edges are associated with the data items”). Thus, combining the

1 “irregular” encoder taught by Luby with the repetition taught by Divsalar would
2 result in an encoder that “repeat[s] the data elements in different sub-blocks a
3 different number of times,” as required by claim 1.

4 191. The irregularity taught by Luby is represented graphically in Figure 17. In
5 particular, the version of Luby’s Fig. 17 reproduced above with green and red
6 highlighting shows that some information bits (colored red) contribute to three
7 parity checks whereas other information bits (colored green) contribute to only two
8 parity checks.

9 192. While Luby does not explicitly teach repetition, Fig. 17 shows that
10 information bits are *used* a different number of times. Reuse is not, in general,
11 repetition; it is possible to reuse bits without repeating them.²⁷ However, the
12 irregular reuse taught by Luby can be implemented using the repetition of Divsalar,
13 as I explain in more detail below. In other words, one way to incorporate Luby’s
14 irregularity into Divsalar was to make Divsalar’s repetition irregular.

15 193. MacKay also teaches this limitation. MacKay builds on the earlier work of
16 Luby to examine the properties of certain irregular Gallager codes (*see, e.g.,*
17 MacKay at 1449). Like Luby, MacKay describes assigning different degrees to
18 different information bits: “[w]e can define an irregular Gallager code in two steps.
19 First, we select a profile that describes the desired number of columns of each
20 weight and the desired number of rows of each weight. The parity check matrix of
21 a code can be viewed as defining a bipartite graph with ‘bit’ vertices corresponding
22 to the columns and ‘check’ vertices corresponding to the rows. Each nonzero entry
23 in the matrix corresponds to an edge connecting a bit to a check. The profile
24 specifies the degrees of the vertices in this graph” (MacKay at 1449-1450).

²⁷ I understand that the Plaintiff attempted to argue that the two terms are synonymous, but the Court was correctly not persuaded by this argument. *See* Claim Construction Order (Dkt. No. 105) at 11 (“Caltech argues that “repeat” can also refer to the re-use of a bit, but the patent’s claims and specification support the Court’s construction”).

1 194. As the passage above explains, in the parity-check matrices taught by
2 MacKay, each information bit corresponds to a particular column, where the
3 weight of that column (*i.e.*, the number of 1s contained in that column of the
4 parity-check matrix) represents the degree of the information bit.

5 195. As I explain above with reference to Table 1 of MacKay, reproduced above,
6 the irregular code with “Profile 93” taught by MacKay effectively partitions the
7 information blocks into two sub-blocks: one sub-block having degree three and the
8 other having degree nine. The information bits in the first sub-block contribute to
9 three parity checks, while the information bits in the second sub-block contribute

10 196. Like the scheme taught by Luby, the codes taught by MacKay involve
11 irregular *reuse* of information bits. As I explain above, reuse is not, in general,
12 repetition. However, as with Luby, the irregularity taught by MacKay can be
13 implemented using the repetition of Divsalar (and one way to incorporate
14 MacKay’s irregularity into Divsalar was to make the repetition irregular), as I
15 explain in more detail below.

16 c) *Motivations to combine the teachings of Divsalar with those of
Luby or MacKay, generally*

17 197. Divsalar, Luby and MacKay are directed to the same field, namely, the field
18 of error-correcting codes. Further, all three references are related to variations and
19 improvements on linear error-correcting codes, and in particular to error-correcting
20 codes that can be encoded quickly. *See, e.g.*, Divsalar at 1 (referring to “practical
21 encoding and decoding algorithms”) (emphasis added); *see also* Luby at 2:51-55
22 (“it is an objective of the present invention to provide a technique for creating loss
23 resilient and error correcting codes which substantially reduce the time required to
24 encode and decode messages”) (emphasis added); *see also* MacKay at 1449
25 (“whereas Gallager codes normally take N^2 time to encode, we investigate

1 constructions of regular and irregular Gallager codes that allow *more rapid*
2 *encoding* and have smaller memory requirements in the encoder”) (emphasis
3 added). Accordingly, one of ordinary skill would have been aware of all the
4 references and further would have understood that the teaching of one reference
5 would inform that of the others. That is, one of ordinary skill would have expected
6 to apply the teachings of the references to each other.

7 d) Motivations to Incorporate the irregularity of Luby or MacKay
8 into the RA codes of Divsalar

9 198. Both Luby and MacKay are related to modifying known regular codes by
10 introducing irregularity. MacKay notes that “[t]he best known binary Gallager
11 codes are irregular codes” (MacKay at 1449), explaining that “[t]he excellent
12 performance of irregular Gallager codes is the motivation for this paper, in which
13 we explore ways of further enhancing these codes” (*id.*). Similarly, Luby shows
14 that incorporating irregularity into known regular codes can improve performance
15 (*see, e.g.*, Luby at 21:52-55, stating that “the failure rate using the [irregular]
16 techniques described above provide a much lower failure rate than those obtainable
17 with regular graphing of the left and right nodes utilized in conventional error
18 correction encoding”). In view of the fact that both Luby and MacKay teach how
19 regular codes can be improved by the introduction of irregularity, one of ordinary
20 skill in the art would have been motivated to incorporate irregularity into the
21 regular repeat-accumulate codes of Divsalar.

22 199. Luby’s work on irregularity is fundamental to the field of coding,
23 representing a major advance in coding theory with broad applicability across
24 various types of codes. By the time the patents-in-suit were filed, a person of
ordinary skill in the art would know that regular codes could be improved by the
addition of irregularity.

1 200. Consistent with this view, Aamod Khandekar, one of the inventors named on
2 the patents-in-suit, wrote in his Ph.D. thesis that “Luby et al. also introduced the
3 concept of irregularity, which seems to provide hope of operating arbitrarily close
4 to channel capacity in a practical manner, on a wide class of channel models”
5 (Khandekar Thesis at 2).²⁸ Khandekar hails “the introduction of irregular LDPC
6 codes by Luby et al.” as a “major breakthrough” (*id.* at 46) and states that IRA
7 codes were merely an application of Luby’s “concept of irregularity to the
8 ensemble of RA codes” as described in Divsalar (*id.* at 47; *see also id.* at 51).

9 201. For at least these reasons, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary
10 skill in the art to incorporate irregularity into the RA codes of Divsalar.

11 e) *Incorporating the irregularity of Luby or MacKay into the RA*
12 *codes of Divsalar would not have been difficult*

13 202. Incorporating irregularity into the RA codes of Divsalar would have been
14 simple for one of ordinary skill; *i.e.*, one of ordinary skill would have converted the
15 regular repeater shown in Figure 3 of Divsalar (reproduced above) into an
16 *irregular* repeater. This modification would allow the other two components of the
17 encoder – the interleaver and the accumulator – to remain unchanged.²⁹

18 203. Divsalar teaches repeating each information bit q times (*see* Divsalar at 5).
19 Using an irregular repeater that repeats some information bits more than others,
20 and then interleaving and accumulating the irregularly repeated bits, would
21 naturally result in an irregular code.

22 ²⁸ When Khandekar refers to “Luby et al.,” he is referring to Michael G. Luby and several of his
23 colleagues. Michael G. Luby is the first-named inventor on the Luby reference. Khandekar cites
24 four separate academic articles by Luby in his graduate thesis, which deals with the subject of
IRA codes (*see* Khandekar Thesis at 103).

²⁹ Minor modifications could be made to the interleaver to account for interleaving a different
number of bits. However, such modifications would not strictly be necessary. For example, if
Divsalar’s “repeat every bit q times” strategy were changed such that one bit was repeated $q+1$
times and another bit were repeated $q-1$ times, the repeat would be irregular and the interleaver
would still deal with the same number of bits per block.

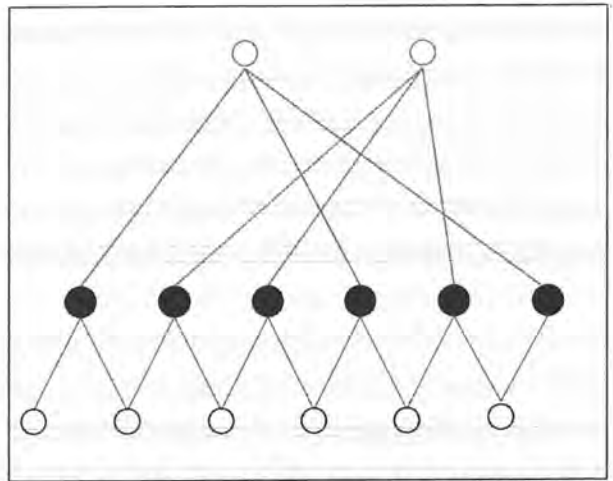
1 204. Nor would this modification have been challenging from a technological
2 standpoint. Repeaters – whether regular or irregular – are conventional
3 components that have been used for decades in a wide variety of digital
4 electronics.³⁰ Modifying an existing encoder to replace a regular repeater with an
5 irregular one would be a simple matter for one of ordinary skill in the art. Also,
6 modifying the message passing decoder would be a simple matter for one of
7 ordinary skill in the art, since the rules of deriving the decoder from the Tanner
8 graph were broadly understood at the time.

8 205. Further, such a modification would preserve the simplicity of the RA codes
9 taught by Divsalar. As I explain above, Divsalar introduced RA codes specifically
10 because they are simple enough to analyze mathematically. IRA codes do not
11 significantly add to the complexity of RA codes in this respect.

12 206. Indeed, IRA codes are so similar to RA codes that the Tanner graph
13 representing any RA code can be modified to represent an IRA code by the
14 addition of a single edge. For example, the figure below, taken from a presentation
15 delivered by Aamod Khandekar, one of the inventors of the patents-in-suit,
16 corresponds to an RA code in which each information node (the hollow circles at
17 the top) contributes to three parity checks (represented by filled circles):

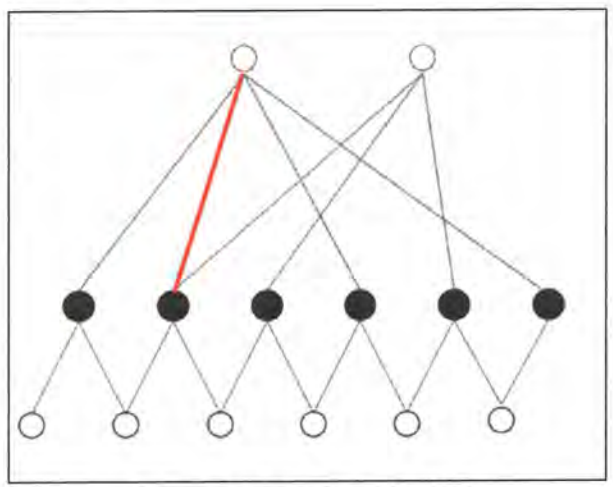
18
19
20
21
22
23
24 ³⁰ As confirmed by, *e.g.*, the testimony of Stephen Wicker (*see* Wicker Tr. at 67).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24



Tanner Graph of an RA Code (CALTECH000007326)

207. This RA code can be turned into an IRA code by adding a single edge (shown in red below). Addition of that single edge (shown in red) makes the bit be repeated four times instead of three.³¹



Tanner Graph of an IRA Code

208. It would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art to incorporate irregularity into Divsalar's RA code by making the repeater irregular. Divsalar's RA code repeater is a simple, obvious, and straightforward component to which to

³¹ As confirmed by, *e.g.*, the testimony of Dariush Divsalar (*see* Divsalar Tr. at 248-249).

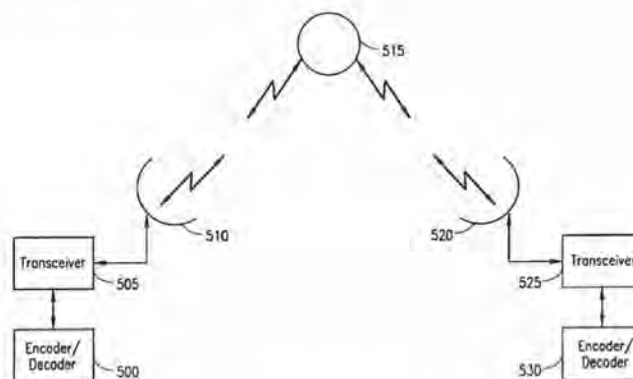
1 apply irregularity. As shown by the two Tanner graphs above, making the repeat
2 irregular is exceedingly simple and does not overly complicate the code
3 analytically. Choosing to make the repeater irregular is one of a finite number of
4 identified, predictable ways to improve the performance of the code (which is the
5 purpose of making a code irregular as taught by Frey99, MacKay, and Luby)..³²
6 209. Finally, as I explain in the remainder of this section, Luby and MacKay
7 teach not only the partitioning and irregular repetition limitations, but several of
8 the other limitations of claim 1 of the '710 patent as well. The similarity and
9 combinability of Divsalar and Luby or MacKay is evidenced by the number of
10 claim limitations they all teach.

11 i. “A method of encoding a signal”

12 210. The preamble is taught by MacKay and Luby. As I explain above, MacKay
13 describes both regular and irregular Gallager codes. The purpose of the disclosed
14 Gallager codes is for the encoding and decoding of signals. MacKay explicitly
15 discloses decoding signals that had been encoded using the disclosed Gallager
16 codes. *See, e.g.*, MacKay at 1451 (“In the experiments presented here, we study
17 binary codes with rate 1/2 and blocklength about $N = 10\,000$. We simulate an
18 additive white Gaussian noise channel in the usual way [2] and examine the block
19 error probability as a function of the signal-to-noise ratio. The error bars we show
20 are one standard deviation error bars on the estimate of the logarithm of the block
21 error probability p defined”); *id.* (“Fig. 3 (a) Comparison of one representative of
22 each of the constructions ... (b) Representatives of all six constructions in Fig. 2”).

23 ³² There are of course many options for making the repeat irregular (*e.g.*, repeat one bit one more
24 times than the others, or use degree profiles suggested by Luby or MacKay) and a person of
ordinary skill would have been motivated to design a particular code that had good performance.
However, the decision to incorporate irregularity itself into the repeater was an easy one.

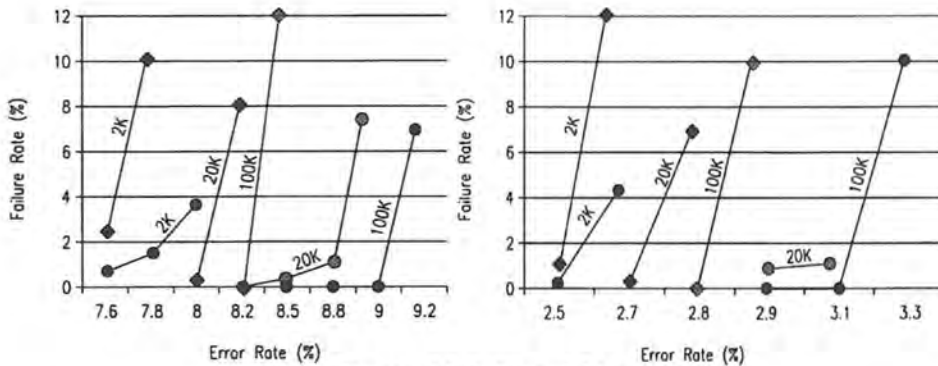
1 211. The preamble is also taught by Luby. As I explain above, Luby introduces
2 irregularity to codes. The purpose of the disclosed irregular codes is for the
3 encoding and decoding of signals. Luby explicitly discloses decoding signals that
4 had been encoded using the disclosed codes. *See, e.g.*, Luby at Figs. 23, 24
5 (showing percent failure rate vs. percent error rate for various codes); *see also id.*
6 at Fig. 25 (reproduced below, showing a signal being encoded, modulated,
7 transmitted, received, and decoded):



Luby, Fig. 25

ii. “obtaining a block of data in the signal to be encoded”

16 212. Luby deals exclusively with block codes. For example, Figures 23 and 24 of
17 Luby show experimental results comparing codes of various block lengths (*i.e.*,
18 block lengths of 2K, 20K, or 100K bits):



Luby, Figures 23 (left) and 24 (right)

213. Mackay also deals with block codes. For example, Figure 1 of MacKay, reproduced below, shows experimental results relating to codes of various block lengths (*see, e.g.*, the block lengths of 24,000 and 65,536 bits identified in the caption of Figure 1):

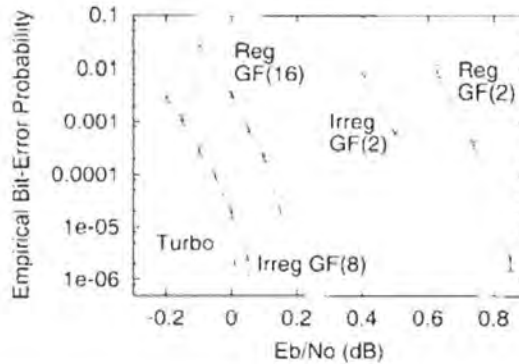


Fig. 1. Empirical results for Gaussian channel, rate 1/4 left-right: irregular LDPC, $GF(8)$ blocklength 24000 bits; JPL Turbo, blocklength 65536 bits; regular LDPC, $GF(16)$, blocklength 24448 bits; irregular LDPC, $GF(2)$, blocklength 64000 bits; regular LDPC, $GF(2)$, blocklength 40000 bits. (Reproduced from [1].)

MacKay, Figure 1

214. As the figures above indicate, each of the codes taught by Luby and MacKay are associated with a “block length.” The “block length” of a code is the number of bits, or “data elements,” contained in the group of information bits that is encoded as a unit.

1 **B. Claim 3 of the '710 Patent is Invalid**

2 215. Claim 3 of the '710 patent reads:

3 3. The method of claim 1, wherein said first encoding is carried out
4 by a first coder with a variable rate less than one, and said second
5 encoding is carried out by a second coder with a rate substantially
6 close to one.

7 i) Claim 3 of the '710 Patent is Anticipated by Frey99

8 216. As I explain above, Frey99 teaches every limitation of claim 1. Frey also
9 teaches the limitations added by claim 3, namely that the “first encoding is carried
10 out by a first coder with a variable rate less than one” and that the “second
11 encoding is carried out by a second coder with a rate substantially close to one.”

12 217. Frey99's first coder is the collection of blocks labeled “Rep2,” “Rep 3,” to
13 “Rep D” in Figure 2. The rate of that encoder is a “variable rate less than one.”
14 Because the number of times bits are repeated varies from 1 to D (*see, e.g.*, Frey99
15 at Figure 2; *see also* Frey Slides at 5), the rate of the first encoder varies within a
16 block between 1 and $1/D$, where D may be set as high as desired. Also, because in
17 an irregular turbocode some bits are duplicated at least once, the rate of the first
18 encoder is always less than or equal to 1, and so the first encoder always has a rate
19 less than one.

20 218. In the paragraph immediately above, I interpreted “variable rate” to refer to
21 an encoder with a rate that varies within a block. As I explain above, under this
22 interpretation of “variable rate,” the encoder taught by Frey99 is a “variable rate”
23 encoder. However, if “variable rate” were construed to mean that the rate of the
24 encoder varies from block to block, then this claim would have been obvious in
25 view of Frey99 because changing the rate of a code over time would have been
26 easy for one of ordinary skill. “Variable rate,” however, should not be construed to
27 mean that the rate of the encoder varies from block to block because such an
28 interpretation is not supported by the specification of the patents.

1 219. Frey99 also teaches a second coder with a rate “substantially close to one.”
2 As described above, Frey99 teaches a convolutional coder with a rate $R' \approx 0.74$.
3 This is a rate “substantially close to one.”

4 220. In summary, Frey99 teaches each and every limitation of claim 3 and
5 therefore anticipates it.

6 ii) Claim 3 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Frey99 in View of
7 Divsalar and Over the Frey Slides in View of Divsalar

8 221. As I explain above, the combination of Frey99 and Divsalar teaches every
9 limitation of claim 1.

10 222. Even if Frey99 is found not to teach a second encoder with a rate
11 “substantially close to one,” this limitation is taught by Divsalar. As explained
12 above, the “second coder” of Divsalar is an accumulator with a rate exactly equal
13 to 1.³³ It would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art to combine the
14 teachings of Frey99 with those of Divsalar, also for the reasons given above.

15 223. Therefore, if Frey99 is found to not teach a second coder with a rate
16 substantially close to one, then claim 3 is obvious over the combination of Frey99
17 and Divsalar.

18 iii) Claim 3 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Divsalar in View of One
19 of Luby or MacKay

20 224. As I explain above, Divsalar combined with either Luby or MacKay renders
21 claim 1 of the '710 patent obvious.

22 225. Divsalar in combination with either of Luby or MacKay also teaches a “first
23 coder with a variable rate less than one.” The “first encoding” step taught by these
24 combinations of references is “irregular repetition,” in which different information

³³ As confirmed by the testimony of Hui Jin, one of the inventors listed on the patents-in-suit (*see*
Jin Tr. at 122).

1 bits are repeated different numbers of times (*i.e.*, Divsalar's repeater modified by
2 the irregular teaching of Luby or MacKay).

3 226. The rate of the first encoder taught by these combinations of references is
4 less than one. Because the first encoder is based on the principle of repetition, it
5 always outputs more bits than it accepts as input, because it outputs multiple
6 duplicates of each information bit. As explained above, the "rate" of an encoder is
7 the ratio between the number of input bits and the number of output bits, so the rate
8 of a repetition-based encoder is always less than one.

9 227. The rate of the first encoder taught by these combinations of references is
10 also "variable." By combining the repetition of Divsalar with the irregularity of
11 Luby or MacKay, we obtain an encoder that repeats different information bits
12 different numbers of times. Therefore, depending on the particular information bit
13 being encoded, the ratio of input bits to output bits – *i.e.*, the rate of the first
14 encoder – varies.

15 228. Further, as explained above, Divsalar also teaches a second coder with a rate
16 equal to one, and thus, a rate "substantially close to one" as required by claim 3 of
17 the '710 patent.³⁴

18 229. As I explain in detail above, it would have been obvious to incorporate the
19 irregularity of Luby or MacKay (*i.e.*, a "variable rate encoder") with the repeat-
20 accumulate codes taught by Divsalar. Thus, the combination of Divsalar with
21 either Luby or MacKay renders claim 3 of the '710 patent obvious.

22 230. Finally, as explained above, although "variable rate" should not be construed
23 to mean that the rate of the encoder varies from block to block, the claim would
24 still be obvious over Divsalar in view of either MacKay or Luby because changing
the rate of a code over time would have been easy for one of ordinary skill.

³⁴ As confirmed by, *e.g.*, the testimony of Hui Jin (*see* Jin Tr. at 122).

1 **C. Claim 4 of the '710 Patent is Invalid**

2 231. Claim 4 of the '710 patent reads:

3 4. The method of claim 3, wherein the second coder comprises an
4 accumulator.

5 i) Claim 4 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Frey99 in View of
6 Divsalar

7 232. As I explain above, the combination of Frey99 and Divsalar teaches every
8 limitation of claim 3. Claim 4 adds to claim 3 that “the second coder comprises an
9 accumulator.” As explained above, Divsalar teaches that the second coder is an
10 accumulator and it would have been obvious to use Divsalar’s accumulator in
11 Frey99. Claim 4 is therefore obvious over the combination of Frey99 and Divsalar.

12 ii) Claim 4 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Divsalar in View of One
13 of Luby or MacKay

14 233. As I explain above, the combination of Divsalar with one of Luby or
15 MacKay teaches every limitation of claim 3. I have also explained that the
16 “second coder” of Divsalar is an “accumulator,” as required by claim 4.

17 **D. Claim 5 of the '710 Patent is Invalid**

18 234. Claim 5 of the '710 patent reads:

19 5. The method of claim 4, wherein the data elements comprises
20 bits.

21 i) Claim 5 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Frey99 in View of
22 Divsalar

23 235. As I explain above, the combination of Frey99 and Divsalar teaches every
24 limitation of claim 4. Claim 5 adds to claim 4 that “the data elements comprise
bits.” Both Frey99 and Divsalar teach methods of encoding signals in which the
“data elements” comprise bits.

1 236. For example, Frey99 teaches codes in which “Each codeword *bit* with
2 degree d is repeated d times before being fed into the permuter” (Frey99 at 2)
3 (emphasis added) (*see also* Frey Slides at 4, showing “parity bits” and “systematic
4 bits”, and at 5 in which open circles also represent bits). Divsalar teaches a
5 “*binary* linear (n, k) block code” (Divsalar at 2) (emphasis added). One of
6 ordinary skill in the art would understand Divsalar’s “binary” block code is a code
7 in which the input data elements are “binary digits” or “bits.”

8 ii) Claim 5 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Divsalar in View of One
9 of Luby or MacKay

10 237. As I explain above, the combination of Divsalar with one of Luby or
11 MacKay teaches every limitation of claim 4. I have also explained that Divsalar
12 teaches methods of encoding signals in which the “data elements” comprise bits.

13 238. Further, both Luby and MacKay teach encoding systems and methods that
14 operate on bits. *See, e.g.*, Luby at 3:17-20 (“a method is provided for encoding a
15 message having a plurality of data items, e.g. message packets or data bits”); *see*
16 *also, e.g.*, MacKay at Figure 1.

17 **E. Claim 6 of the '710 Patent is Invalid**

18 239. Claim 6 of the '710 patent reads:

19 6. The method of claim 5, wherein the first coder comprises a
20 repeater operable to repeat different sub-blocks a different number
21 of times in response to a selected degree profile.

22 i) Claim 6 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Frey99 in View of
23 Divsalar

24 240. As I explain above, the combination of Frey99 and Divsalar teaches every
25 limitation of claim 5. Further, Frey99 teaches the limitation added by claim 6, *i.e.*,
26 repeating “different sub-blocks a different number of times in response to a
27 selected degree profile.” As I explain in Frey99, “an *irregular turbocode* has the
28 form shown in Fig. 2, which is a type ‘trellis-constrained code’ as described in [7].

1 We specify a *degree profile*, $f_d \in [0, 1]$, $d \in \{1, 2, \dots, D\}$. f_d is the fraction of
2 codeword bits that have degree d and D is the maximum degree. Each codeword
3 bit with degree d is repeated d times before being fed into the permuter” (Frey99 at
4 2) (emphasis in original) (*see also* Frey Slides at 5, titled “Rate-degree relations
5 and 6, titled “Simplified degree profiles”).

6 241. The “degree profile” described in the above passage from Frey99 determines
7 what fraction of information bits are repeated d times, for all relevant values of d
8 (*see also, e.g.,* Frey Slides at 6, “Degree d_e : Fraction f_e ‘elite’ bits have degree d_e ”).

9 ii) Claim 6 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Divsalar in View of One
10 of Luby or MacKay

11 242. As I explain above, the combination of Divsalar with one of Luby or
12 MacKay teaches every limitation of claim 5. Further, these combinations also
13 teach the limitation added by claim 6.

14 243. MacKay teaches constructing an irregular Gallager code by selecting a
15 degree profile: “We can define an irregular Gallager code in two steps. First, we
16 select a *profile* that describes the desired number of columns of each weight and
17 the desired number of rows of each weight. The parity check matrix of a code can
18 be viewed as defining a bipartite graph with ‘bit’ vertices corresponding to the
19 columns and ‘check’ vertices corresponding to the rows. Each nonzero entry in the
20 matrix corresponds to an edge connecting a bit to a check. The profile specifies
21 the degrees of the vertices in this graph” (MacKay at 1449-1450) (emphasis in
22 original).

23 244. Luby also teaches constructing an irregular code by selecting a degree
24 profile. This process is represented graphically in Figure 17 of Luby, reproduced
below:

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

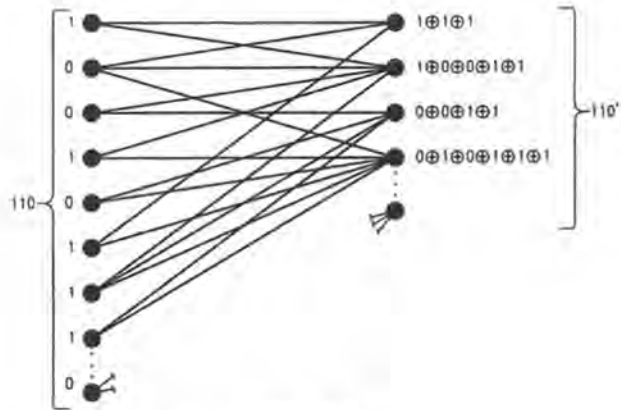


FIG. 17

245. This figure represents a degree profile for an irregular error-correcting code. As shown above, some information bits are connected to two parity checks (*i.e.*, have a degree of two) and other information bits are connected to three parity checks (*i.e.*, have a degree of three). A person of ordinary skill in the art would understand that assigning a first group of two or more input bits a first degree (*e.g.*, two) and a second group of input bits a second degree (*e.g.*, three) is selection of a “degree profile” for the code.³⁵

246. By combining the repetition of Divsalar with the degree profiles taught by either Luby or MacKay, one of ordinary skill in the art would obtain “a repeater operable to repeat different sub-blocks a different number of times in response to a selected degree profile,” as required by claim 6 of the '710 patent.

247. Further, as I explain in detail above, it would have been obvious to incorporate the irregular degree profiles of Luby or MacKay with the repeat-accumulate codes taught by Divsalar. Thus, the combination of Divsalar with either Luby or MacKay renders claim 6 of the '710 patent obvious.

³⁵ This is consistent with the testimony of Dariush Divsalar (*see, e.g.*, Divsalar Tr. at 143-146).

1 **F. Claim 15 of the '710 Patent is Invalid**

2 248. Claim 15 of the '710 patent reads as follows:

- 3 15. A coder comprising:
4 a first coder having an input configured to receive a stream of bits,
5 said first coder operative to repeat said stream of bits irregularly
6 and scramble the repeated bits; and
7 a second coder operative to further encode bits output from the
8 first coder at a rate within 10% of one.

9 i) Claim 15 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Frey99 in View of
10 Divsalar

11 249. I explain below that Frey99 teaches every limitation of claim 15 of the '710
12 patent except the requirement that the second coder encode bits “at a rate within 10%
13 of one.” Also, as explained above with respect to claim 1, Divsalar teaches a
14 second coder, *i.e.*, an accumulator, that has a rate of exactly one, and it would have
15 been obvious to use Divsalar’s accumulator in Frey99. Therefore, claim 1 is
16 obvious in view of the combination of Frey99 and Divsalar.

17 a) Frey99 teaches every limitation of Claim 1 except “a rate within
18 10% of one”

19 i. “A coder comprising ...”

20 250. Even if the preamble limits the claim, it is taught by Frey99. As I explain
21 above, Frey99 deals with the construction of irregular turbocodes. A person of
22 ordinary skill in the art would recognize that these turbocodes encode information
23 bits using “a coder.” Further, in the experimental results disclosed in Frey99 (and
24 the Frey Slides) (*e.g.*, as identified above with respect to the preamble of claim 1),
the encoded bits were produced by a coder.

- 1 ii. “a first coder having an input configured to receive a stream
2 of bits, said first coder operative to repeat said stream of bits
3 irregularly and scramble the repeated bits”

4 251. Frey99 teaches this limitation. As explained above in the context of claim 1
5 of the '710 patent, Frey99 teaches a first coder that irregularly repeats bits. Frey99
6 further teaches that the irregularly repeated bits are passed as input to a permuter,
7 which scrambles the repeated bits.

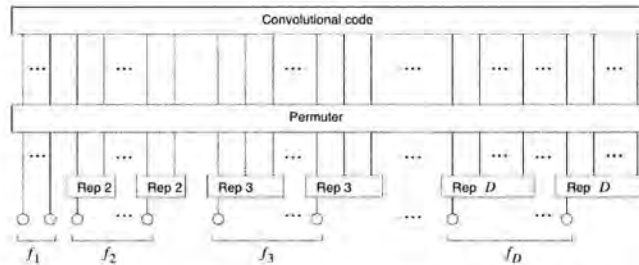
8 252. A “stream” of bits, as that term is used by those of ordinary skill in the art, is
9 merely a sequence of bits. Block encoders like the encoders taught by Frey99, and
10 the ones described in the specification of the patents-in-suit, receive a “stream” of
11 bits and partition that stream into blocks of bits. Each block of bits is then encoded
12 by a first encoder, the encoded bits are then interleaved, and the interleaved bits are
13 encoded by a second encoder, producing a codeword. One of ordinary skill in the
14 art would thus understand that the methods and systems taught in Frey99 operate
15 on a stream of bits.³⁶

- 16 iii. “a second coder operative to further encode bits output from
17 the first coder”

18 253. Frey99 teaches “a second coder operative to further encode bits output from
19 the first encoder.” The “second coder” taught by Frey99 is a convolutional
20 encoder, which accepts irregularly repeated and permuted bits as input and encodes
21

22 ³⁶ I understand that Caltech has accused DVB-S2 LDPC encoders of infringement. The DVB-
23 S2 LDPC encoder is a block encoder that operates on fixed size blocks. If by “stream,” Caltech
24 meant an un-partitioned continuous set of bits, then the “stream” limitation could not be
infringed. I therefore understand “stream” in the asserted claims to mean a sequence of bits.
Even in the absence of considerations of DVB-S2, “sequence of bits” is the meaning one of
ordinary skill would assign to “stream” in the asserted patents. I note that in the *Inter Partes*
Review, Prof. Pfister considered the alternate interpretation of “stream,” i.e., an un-partitioned
continuous set of bits. Even under that interpretation, the claims using the “stream” limitation
would be obvious in view of the references addressed herein. However, for the reasons
explained herein, Caltech must interpret “stream” to cover block codes to preserve its
infringement case and therefore under Caltech’s application of the claims, references that
describe block codes meet the “stream” limitation.

1 these bits to produce parity bits, as shown in Figure 2, reproduced below (*see also*
2 Frey Slides at 5):



3
4
5
6
7
8 Figure 2: A general *irregular turboencoder*. For $d = 1, \dots, D$, fraction f_d of the codeword bits are repeated d times, permuted and connected to a convolutional code.

9 b) "at a rate within 10% of one"

10 254. As I explain above, the accumulator of Divsalar is a "second encoder" with a
11 rate that is exactly equal to 1.

12 c) One of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to
13 combine Divsalar's accumulator with the irregular turbocodes
of Frey99

14 255. As I explain above, one of ordinary skill in the art would have been
15 motivated to combine Divsalar and Frey99 in general, and would specifically have
16 been motivated to use the accumulator of Divsalar in Frey99.

17 d) The combinability of Frey99 and Divsalar is further
18 demonstrated by Divsalar's teaching of other limitations of claim
15

19 256. As I explain in this section, Divsalar teaches not only a "rate within 10% of
20 one," but also most of the remaining limitations of claim 15 of the '710 patent.
21 The similarity and combinability of Frey99 and Divsalar is evidenced by the
22 number of claim limitations they both teach.

23
24

1 i. “A coder comprising ...”

2 257. Divsalar teaches the preamble. As I explain above, Divsalar describes a
3 “turbo-like” code called a repeat-accumulate code. A “coder” capable of encoding
4 information bits using a repeat-accumulate code is shown in Figure 3 of Divsalar,
5 reproduced above.

6 ii. “a first coder having an input configured to receive a stream
7 of bits, said first coder operative to repeat said stream of bits”

8 258. As explained above with reference to claim 1 of the '710 patent, Divsalar
9 teaches a first coder that repeats bits. While Divsalar does not teach repeating the
10 bits “irregularly,” it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art to
11 combine the repetition of Divsalar with the irregular repetition of Frey99, as I
12 explained above with reference to claim 1 of the '710 patent.

13 iii. “and scramble the repeated bits”

14 259. Divsalar teaches this limitation. Figure 3 of Divsalar, reproduced above,
15 shows a “permutation matrix” (the box labeled “P”). As I explain in detail above,
16 after the repeater duplicates each of the N information bits q times and outputs $N \times$
17 q repeated bits, the repeated bits are “scrambled by an interleaver of size qN ”
18 (Divsalar at 5).

19 ii) Claim 15 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Divsalar in View of
20 One of Luby or MacKay

21 260. Claim 15 is rendered obvious by a combination of Divsalar and either
22 MacKay or Luby. As noted above, Divsalar teaches all but one feature of the IRA
23 codes that Caltech claims to have invented. That is, Divsalar teaches *regular*
24 repeat-accumulate codes instead of *irregular* repeat-accumulate codes. Adding
one feature, irregularity, to Divsalar results in the claimed IRA codes. As
explained in detail above, with reference to claim 1 of the '710 patent, it would

1 have been obvious to combine the teachings of Divsalar with the irregularity taught
2 in either of Luby or MacKay.

3 a) Divsalar teaches every limitation of Claim 15 except irregularity

4 261. As I explain above, Divsalar teaches:

- 5 • “A coder comprising: ...”
6 • “a first coder having an input configured to receive a stream of bits, said first
7 coder operative to repeat said stream of bits ...”
8 • “... and scramble the repeated bits;” and
9 • “a second coder operative to further encode bits output from the first coder
10 at a rate within 10% of one”

11 262. The only portion of the claim that Divsalar fails to teach is: “... repeat[ing]
12 said stream of bits *irregularly* ...” (the “irregularity” limitation).³⁷

13 b) Both Luby and MacKay teach the irregularity limitation

14 263. As explained above with reference to claim 1, Luby and MacKay each teach
15 irregularity and one of ordinary skill would have been motivated to incorporate
16 that irregularity into Divsalar. Doing so results in a combination that teaches all
17 limitations of claim 15.

18 **G. Claim 20 of the '710 Patent is Invalid**

19 264. Claim 20 of the '710 patent reads as follows:

20 20. The coder of claim 15, wherein the first coder comprises a low-
21 density generator matrix coder.

22 i) Claim 20 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Frey99 in View of
23 Divsalar

24 265. As I explained above, the combination of Frey99 with Divsalar teaches
every limitation of claim 15. Both Frey99 and Divsalar also teach the limitation

³⁷ To be clear, Divsalar does teach “repeating said stream of bits,” but does not teach “repeating
said stream of bits *irregularly*.”

1 added by claim 20, *i.e.*, that the “first coder comprises a low-density generator
2 matrix coder.”

3 266. As explained in Appendix A, a generator matrix is a mathematical
4 representation of an encoder that represents how information bits are transformed
5 into encoded bits. A generator matrix is a two-dimensional array of 1s and 0s. A
6 “low-density” generator matrix is a matrix with a relatively small number of 1s
7 compared to the number of 0s.³⁸

8 267. The generator matrix associated with a “repeat” encoder (whether regular, as
9 taught by Divsalar, or irregular, as taught by Frey99) is a low-density generator
10 matrix. For example, the following is a generator matrix that can be used to repeat
11 each information bit three times:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & \dots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{bmatrix}$$

16 268. In this matrix, the rows correspond to bits input to the LDGM encoder: the
17 first row corresponds to a first bit input to the encoder, the second row corresponds
18 to a second input bit, the third to the third, and so on. Because each column of this
19 matrix contains only a single “1,” each parity bit produced by this matrix will be a
20 duplicate (or “repeat”) of one of the input (or “information”) bits. If a column
21 contained more than a single “1,” then the corresponding parity bit would be a

22
23 ³⁸ Caltech agrees with this interpretation of “low-density.” As Caltech explains in its *Markman*
24 tutorial, “[m]atrices with contain mostly zeroes and very few ones are called sparse matrices or
low-density matrices” (Dkt. No. 85 at 14:13-14; *see also* Wicker Tr. at 60; *see also, e.g.*, Jin Tr.
at 174).

1 combination of (or sum of) information bits, but this matrix contains no such
2 columns.

3 269. The number of repeated bits generated by this encoder is defined by the
4 number of “1s” appearing in each input bit’s row. Using the generator matrix
5 above, encoding a stream of input bits beginning with “101...” would result in an
6 encoded sequence of bits that begins “111000111...”

7 270. As the example above shows, a generator matrix corresponding to a repeat
8 encoder has exactly one “1” per column. Thus, a $k \times n$ repeater matrix, with k
9 rows and n columns, contains a total of n 1s, for a total density of $n/(kn) = 1/k$.
10 One of ordinary skill in the art would understand that a matrix having only a single
11 1 per column is a “low-density” matrix.³⁹

12 271. Summarizing, the repeaters taught in both Frey99 and Divsalar correspond
13 to an LDGM coder that uses a generator matrix of the form illustrated above.
14 Because that matrix is “low-density,” both Frey99 and Divsalar teach the limitation
15 added by claim 20.

16 ii) Claim 20 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Divsalar in View of
17 One of Luby or MacKay

18 272. As I explained above, the combination of Divsalar with one of Luby or
19 MacKay teaches every limitation of claim 15. Also, as I explain above, Divsalar
20 teaches a first coder, *i.e.*, a repeater, that is a low-density generator matrix coder.
21 Even when Divsalar’s repeater is made into an irregular repeater by incorporating
22 Luby’s or MacKay’s teaching of irregularity, the repeater remains a low-density

23 ³⁹ A generator matrix for repeating a very small block size may not be low density. For example,
24 of the block size is two and each bit is repeated twice, the matrix would have four elements, two
ones and two zeroes. With half of the elements being non-zero, the matrix would not be low
density. However, such degenerate cases do not detract from the point that in general generator
matrices for repeat codes are low density. Once the block size is increased sufficiently, the
matrix will become low density. For example, a generator matrix for the block sizes explicitly
contemplated in Frey99, Divsalar, Luby or MacKay would all be low density.

1 generator matrix coder. Therefore, claim 20 is obvious over Divsalar in view of
2 one of Luby or MacKay.

3 **H. Claim 21 of the '710 Patent is Invalid**

4 273. Claim 21 of the '710 patent reads:

5 21. The coder of claim 15, wherein the second coder comprises a
6 rate 1 linear encoder.

7 i) Claim 21 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Frey99 in View of
8 Divsalar

9 274. As I explained above, the combination of Frey99 and Divsalar teaches every
10 limitation of claim 15.

11 275. Also, as explained above with reference to claim 1 of the '710 patent,
12 Divsalar teaches a second coder that is an accumulator having a rate equal to 1.
13 Also, an accumulator is a linear encoder. The generator matrix for an accumulator
14 has the form:

15
$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & \dots \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & \dots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & \dots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{bmatrix}$$

16
17
18
19
20
21 276. As explained in Appendix A, a generator matrix represents a linear
22 transformation, and any code (such as this one) that can be represented using a
23 generator matrix is a linear code.

24

1 277. Claim 22 of the '710 patent underscores the fact that an accumulator is a
2 linear encoder. It recites “[t]he coder of claim 21, wherein the second coder
3 comprises an accumulator.” It logically follows that Divsalar’s accumulator is a
4 particular example of a “rate 1 linear encoder,” as required by claim 21 (*see also*,
5 *e.g.*, Jin Dep. at 122:7-13).

6 ii) Claim 21 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Divsalar in View of
7 One of Luby or MacKay

8 278. As I explained above, the combination of Divsalar and either Luby or
9 MacKay renders claim 15 obvious. I also explained above how Divsalar teaches a
10 second encoder comprising a rate 1 linear encoder. Therefore, claim 21 is also
11 obvious over Divsalar in view of one of Luby or MacKay.

12 **I. Claim 22 of the '710 Patent is Invalid**

13 279. Claim 22 of the '710 patent reads:

14 22. The coder of claim 21, wherein the second coder comprises an
15 accumulator.

16 i) Claim 22 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Frey99 in View of
17 Divsalar

18 280. Above I explain how Divsalar and Frey99 render obvious claim 21, and
19 further how Divsalar teaches a “second encoder” that comprises an “accumulator.”
20 Therefore, claim 22 is also obvious over the combination of Divsalar and Frey99.

21 ii) Claim 22 of the '710 Patent is Obvious Over Divsalar in View of
22 One of Luby or MacKay

23 281. Above I explain how Divsalar combined with either Luby or MacKay render
24 obvious claim 21, and further how Divsalar teaches a “second encoder” that
comprises an “accumulator.” Therefore, claim 22 is also obvious over Divsalar
combined with either Luby or MacKay.

1 **VII. THE ASSERTED CLAIMS OF THE '032 PATENT ARE INVALID**

2 282. As I explain below, asserted claims 1, 18, 19, and 22 of the '032 patent are
 3 invalid. A summary of the opinions set forth in this section is given in the table
 4 below:

'032 Claim	Ping + Frey99 (or Frey slides)	Ping + MacKay or Luby	Divsalar + Frey99 (or Frey slides), Luby, or MacKay	Divsalar + Frey99 (or Frey slides), Luby, or MacKay + Ping
1	Obvious	Obvious (under Caltech's construction of "repeat")	Obvious	
18			Obvious	Obvious (Ping not necessary)
19			Obvious	Obvious
22			Obvious	Obvious (Ping not necessary)

12 **A. Claim 1 of the '032 Patent is Invalid**

13 283. Claim 1 of the '032 patent reads:

14 1. A method comprising:
 15 receiving a collection of message bits having a first sequence in a
 16 source data stream;
 17 generating a sequence of parity bits, wherein each parity bit "x_j" in
 18 the sequence is in accordance with the formula

$$x_j = x_{j-1} + \sum_{i=1}^a v_{(j-1)a+i}$$

19 where "x_{j-1}" is the value of a parity bit "j-1," and

$$\sum_{i=1}^a v_{(j-1)a+i}$$

20 is the value of a sum of "a" randomly chosen irregular repeats of
 21 the message bits; and
 22 making the sequence of parity bits available for transmission in a
 23 transmission data stream.
 24

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

i) Claim 1 of the '032 patent is Obvious over Ping In View of Frey99 (or Frey Slides)

284. I explain below, one limitation at a time, why claim 1 is rendered obvious by Ping in view of Frey99 (or Frey Slides).

a) "receiving a collection of message bits having a first sequence in a source data stream"

285. Ping teaches "receiving a collection of message bits having a first sequence in a source data stream."

286. Ping refers to the collection of information bits to be encoded using the vector variable name **d**. Ping states: "[d]ecompose the codeword **c** as **c** = [**p**, **d**], where **p** and **d** contain the parity and information bits, respectively" (Ping at 38). Ping goes on to provide equations from which "**p** = { p_i }" can easily be calculated from a given **d** = { d_i }" (*id.*).

287. The term "message bits" is synonymous with "information bits." One of ordinary skill in the art would understand that the information bits **d**, as taught by Ping, is a "collection of message bits having a first sequence."

288. Further, as I explain above, under Caltech's application of the claims, a "data stream," is merely a sequence of bits. Block encoders like the ones taught by Ping, and the ones described in the specification of the patents-in-suit, receive a "collection of message bits having a first sequence in a source data stream."

1 b) "generating a sequence of parity bits, wherein each parity bit " x_j "
2 in the sequence is in accordance with the formula

3
$$x_j = x_{j-1} + \sum_{i=1}^a v_{(j-1)a+i} "$$

4 289. This limitation means that each parity bit x_j in the claimed sequence of parity
5 bits is equal to the sum of the previous parity bit x_{j-1} and the sum of " a "
6 information bits, $\sum_{i=1}^a v_{(j-1)a+i}$.

7 290. This is precisely the coding method taught by Ping. Specifically, Ping
8 teaches an encoding operation that calculates the parity bits $\{p_i\}$ using the
9 information bits $\{d_i\}$ as an input as follows:

10
$$p_1 = \sum_j h_{1j}^d d_j$$

11
$$p_i = p_{i-1} + \sum_j h_{ij}^d d_j$$

12 (Ping at 38) (Eq. 4)

13 291. In Ping, the parity bits, referenced in the claim as x_j , are denoted using the
14 letter p (e.g., in Ping, the i^{th} parity bit is denoted p_i).

15 292. As required by claim 1 of the '032 patent, the first parity bit of Ping, p_1 , is
16 calculated as the sum of a subset of information bits and, as shown below, each
17 subsequent parity bit p_i is calculated by adding together the previous parity bit p_{i-1}
18 (the green box) and a sum of bits in a subset of information bits (the red box):⁴⁰
19

20
21
22 ⁴⁰ As was well understood by those of ordinary skill, the " Σ " symbol denotes a summation. For
23 example, $\sum_j h_{ij}^d d_j$ means $h_{i1}^d d_1 + h_{i2}^d d_2 + \dots + h_{ij}^d d_j$, where J is an integer. If the " h " values
24 are all either zero or one, as they are in Ping, and the " d " values are information bits, then this
equation produces a sum of information bits.

$$p_i = p_{i-1} + \sum_j h_{ij}^d d_j$$

Ping, Eq. 4

c) "where x_{j-1} is the value of a parity bit $j-1$," and

$$\sum_{i=1}^a v_{(j-1)a+i}$$

is the value of a sum of a randomly chosen irregular repeats of the message bits"

293. Ping teaches an encoding method in which each parity bit is the sum of the previous parity bit plus the sum of a number of randomly chosen collections of the message bits. The expression $\sum_{i=1}^a v_{(j-1)a+i}$, as it appears in the claim, is given in Ping as $\sum_j h_{ij}^d d_j$ (Ping at 38).

294. The variable h_{ij}^d represents the value at the i^{th} row and the j^{th} column of the parity check matrix \mathbf{H}^d (see *id.*). The variable d_j represents the value of the j^{th} information bit. Thus,

$$\sum_j h_{ij}^d d_j$$

represents the sum of the bits in a subset of information bits (specifically, the subset of information bits d_j where $h_{ij}^d = 1$). As Ping explains, the matrix \mathbf{H}^d is randomized. \mathbf{H}^d is comprised of t sub-blocks $\mathbf{H}^{d1}, \dots, \mathbf{H}^{dt}$ as follows:

$$\mathbf{H}^d = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{H}^{d1} \\ \vdots \\ \mathbf{H}^{dt} \end{pmatrix}$$

(Ping at 38)

1 295. Ping further states: “[i]n each sub-block \mathbf{H}^{di} , $I = 1, 2 \dots t$, we *randomly*
2 create exactly one element 1 per column and $kt/(n-k)$ 1s per row” (*id.*) (emphasis
3 added). Thus, the particular information bits summed by the expression $\sum_j h_{ij}^d d_j$
4 are “randomly chosen,” as required by claim 1 of the ’032 patent.⁴¹

5 296. Ping therefore teaches everything in this limitation except the “irregular
6 repeats” limitation. While Ping does not teach “irregular repeats” of the message
7 bits, Frey99 (and the Frey Slides) teaches irregular repetition, as I explained above.

8 297. For the reasons given below, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary
9 skill in the art to combine the accumulation-based encoding of Ping with the
10 irregular repetition of Frey99 (or the Frey Slides).

11 *d) “making the sequence of parity bits available for transmission in*
a transmission data stream”

12 298. As explained above, the codeword taught by Ping comprises parity bits,
13 (denoted with the boldface letter **p**). Specifically, Ping teaches “[d]ecompos[ing]
14 the codeword **c** as **c** = [**p**, **d**], where **p** and **d** contain the parity and information bits,
15 respectively” (Ping at 38).

16 299. Ping also analyzes the performance of the codes it describes, graphing the
17 BER of various LDPC-accumulate coders against various values of E_b/N_0 :
18
19
20
21

22 ⁴¹ I understand that Caltech has argued that the asserted claims cover the DVB-S2 algorithm. A
23 DVB-S2 encoder merely implements previously defined deterministic (non-random) operations.
24 Therefore, under Caltech’s application of the claims, “randomly chosen” must refer to random
choices made while defining the coding algorithm itself (as opposed to making random choices
during the encoding itself).

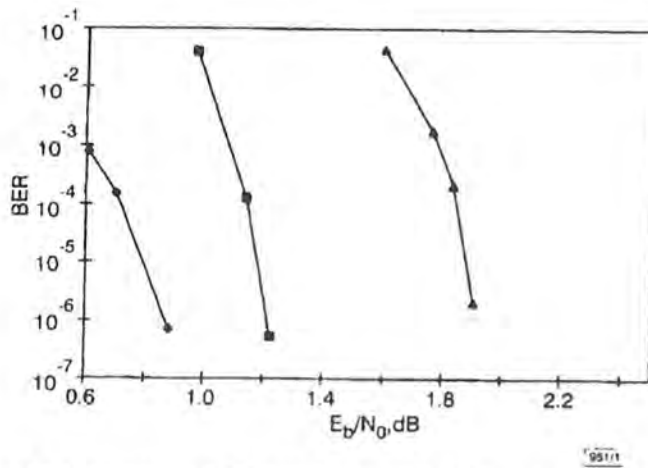


Fig. 1 Performances of LDPC codes generated by semi-random parity check matrixes with $k = 30000$

- ◆ $R = 1/3$
- $R = 1/2$
- ▲ $R = 2/3$

Ping, Fig. 1

300. The concepts of “BER” and E_b/N_0 only make sense in the context of generating codewords (including the parity bits \mathbf{p}), transmitting them over a noisy channel, and decoding them at the other end. Thus, Ping teaches “making the sequence of parity bits available for transmission in a transmission data stream,” as required by claim 1 of the ’032 patent.

e) Summary

301. As explained above, the combination of Ping and Frey99 (or the Frey Slides) teaches every limitation of claim 1 of the ’032 patent.

f) Motivations to Combine the teachings of Ping with those of Frey99 (or the Frey Slides)

302. Ping and Frey99 (or the Frey Slides) are both directed to the same field, namely the field of error-correcting codes. In particular, both Ping and Frey99 relate to linear error-correcting codes and enhancements thereto: Frey99, titled “Irregular Turbocodes,” teaches modifying known coding techniques to include

1 irregularity; Ping, titled “Low Density Parity Check Codes with Semirandom
2 Parity Check Matrix,” teaches constructing LDPC codes that can be encoded
3 efficiently and have good BER vs. E_b/N_0 performance (see Ping at 39). Given that
4 both references relate to improvements to error-correcting codes, one of ordinary
5 skill in the art would have been motivated to combine their teachings.

6 303. Further, as explained above, Luby and MacKay taught that performance of a
7 code could be improved by making the code irregular and that teaching was well
8 known in the art prior to Caltech’s claimed conception date or its filing date. That
9 well-known teaching would have further motivated one of ordinary skill to
10 incorporate Frey’s irregular repetition into Ping’s coding algorithm.

11 304. Further, combining irregular repetition as taught by Frey99 (and the Frey
12 Slides) with accumulation as taught by Ping would have been a simple matter for
13 one of ordinary skill in the art, as described above with reference to the asserted
14 claims of the ’710 patent. Such a combination would involve a routine substitution
15 of one component for another and the resulting combination would have performed
16 as expected.

17 ii) Claim 1 of the ’032 patent is Obvious over Ping In View of MacKay
18 or Luby

19 305. I understand that the Plaintiff attempted to argue that “repeat” and “reuse”
20 are synonymous, but the Court was correctly not persuaded by this argument. See
21 Claim Construction Order (Dkt. No. 105) at 11 (“Caltech argues that ‘repeat’ can
22 also refer to the re-use of a bit, but the patent’s claims and specification support the
23 Court’s construction”). Unless stated otherwise, my invalidity opinions in this
24 report are based on the Court’s construction that “repeat” should be given its plain
25 meaning, which is “duplication.” Claim Construction Order dated August 6, 2014,
26 p. 10.

1 306. Plaintiff's infringement arguments, however, still appear to be based on an
2 interpretation of "repeat" that does not require duplication, but merely reuse.⁴²
3 Under this interpretation, claim 1 of the '032 patent would be rendered obvious by
4 Ping in view of either MacKay or Luby. Further, repeating bits in order to reuse
5 them would not have been inventive and instead would have been nothing more
6 than an implementation detail. Accordingly, even under the proper construction in
7 which repeat means duplicate, the claims are still obvious over Ping in view of
8 either MacKay or Luby.

8 307. As I explain above, Ping teaches every limitation of claim 1 except
9 "irregular repeats." Neither MacKay nor Luby teach "repeats" under the Court's
10 construction of the term "repeat – that is, they do not teach duplicating bits.
11 However, MacKay and Luby do teach irregular *reuse* of bits, as I explain above
12 with reference to the claims of the '710 patent.

13 308. It would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art to combine the
14 LDPC-accumulate coders of Ping with the irregularity of MacKay or Luby. As
15 described above, Luby and MacKay are directed to the same field, namely the field
16 of error correcting codes, and specifically, variations and improvements on linear
17 error-correcting codes that allow them to be encoded more quickly. Ping is related
18 to the same field; Ping, titled "Low Density Parity Check Codes with Semirandom
19 Parity Check Matrix," teaches constructing LDPC codes that can be encoded
20 efficiently and have good BER vs. E_b/N_0 performance (*see* Ping at 39). Given that
21 Ping, MacKay, and Luby relate to improvements to error-correcting codes, one of
22 ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to combine the teachings of
23 Ping with those of at least one of Luby or MacKay.

23 ⁴² That is, in DVB-S2, the parity bits are not repeats of the information bits. Rather, in DVB-S2,
24 each parity bit is the sum of a collection of information bits. Thus, although information bits
may be reused in DVB-S2's LDPC code, they are not repeated.

1 309. Further, because Luby and MacKay both taught that irregular codes perform
2 better than regular ones, one of ordinary skill would have been motivated to
3 incorporate irregularity into Ping. Ping's code is regular because each column in
4 Ping's H^d matrix contains the same number of ones, i.e., each of Ping's columns
5 contains exactly "t" ones (Ping at 38). However, changing Ping's H^d matrix such
6 that not all columns had the same weight would have made Ping's code irregular
7 and would have been an easy way for one of ordinary skill to incorporate
8 irregularity into Ping. As explained above, MacKay teaches parity-check matrices
9 in which each information bit corresponds to a column, where the weight of that
10 column (i.e., the number of 1s contained in that column of the parity-check matrix)
11 represents the degree of the information bit. MacKay also notes that "[t]he best
12 known binary Gallager codes are *irregular* codes whose parity check matrices have
13 *nonuniform* weight per column" (Mackay at 1449) (emphasis in original). Given
14 these teachings of MacKay, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in
15 the art to incorporate irregularity into the LDPC-accumulate coders of Ping by
16 making the column weights of the parity check matrix H^d nonuniform.

17 310. Summarizing, Ping teaches a code that can be described as a regular LDPC
18 followed by an accumulate (or a serial concatenated code in which the outer coder
19 is a regular LDPC coder and the inner coder is an accumulator).⁴³ Thus, in Ping's
20 code, every parity bit is the sum of (a) the previous parity bit and (b) a sum of
21 randomly chosen regular "reuses" of the message bits. One of ordinary skill in the
22 art would have been motivated by the teachings of Luby and MacKay to replace
23 Ping's regular LDPC coder with an irregular LDPC coder.

24 ⁴³ Ping's equation (4) for p_i , is of the form $p_i = p_{i-1} + X$, which is an accumulate operation and shows that Ping's outer coder is an accumulator. Further, the summation term in equation (4) (denoted by "X" in the prior sentence) provides an LDPC encoding, thus showing that Ping's inner coder is an LDPC coder.

1 311. In Ping's code as modified to include irregularity per the teachings of Luby
2 or MacKay, each parity bit would be the sum of (a) the previous parity bit and (b) a
3 sum of randomly chosen irregular "reuses" of the message bits.

4 312. Thus, under Caltech's theory that "repeat" means "reuse," claim 1 of
5 the '032 patent would be rendered obvious by Ping in view of MacKay or Luby.
6 Also, as noted above, repeating bits in order to reuse them would not have been
7 inventive and instead would have been nothing more than an obvious
8 implementation detail. Accordingly, even under the proper construction in which
9 repeat means duplicate, the claims are still obvious over Ping in view of either
10 MacKay or Luby.

11 iii) Claim 1 of the '032 Patent is Obvious over Divsalar in view of Luby
12 or MacKay

13 313. I explain below, one limitation at a time, why claim 1 is rendered obvious by
14 Divsalar in view of Luby or MacKay.

15 a) "receiving a collection of message bits having a first sequence in
16 a source data stream"

17 314. As explained above with reference to the claims of the '710 patent, Divsalar
18 teaches "receiving a collection of message bits having a first sequence." Also for
19 the reasons explained above, while Divsalar does not explicitly make reference to
20 an input configured to receive a "data stream," as required by this limitation, one
21 of ordinary skill in the art would understand that the methods and systems taught in
22 Divsalar operate on a data stream.

23 b) "generating a sequence of parity bits, wherein each parity bit " x_j "
24 in the sequence is in accordance with the formula

$$x_j = x_{j-1} + \sum_{i=1}^a v_{(j-1)a+i}"$$

1 315. This limitation means that each parity bit x_j in the claimed sequence of parity
2 bits is equal to the sum of the previous parity bit x_{j-1} and the sum of “ a ”
3 information bits, $\sum_{i=1}^a v_{(j-1)a+i}$.

4 315. This limitation means that each parity bit x_j in the claimed sequence of parity
5 bits is equal to the sum of the previous parity bit x_{j-1} and the sum of “ a ”
6 information bits, $\sum_{i=1}^a v_{(j-1)a+i}$.

7 316. As explained above, the accumulator of Divsalar performs an accumulation
8 operation as follows:

9 [W]e prefer to think of [the accumulator] as a block coder whose
input block $[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ and output block $[y_1, \dots, y_n]$ are related by
the formula

$$\begin{aligned} 10 \quad y_1 &= x_1 \\ 11 \quad y_2 &= x_1 + x_2 \\ y_3 &= x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \\ 12 \quad y_n &= x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \dots + x_n \end{aligned}$$

(Divsalar at 5)

13 317. This operation can be represented recursively using the equation $y_i = y_{i-1} + x_i$.
14 Using the recursive formulation, one can see that each parity bit y_i is the sum of the
15 previous parity bit y_{i-1} and a single information bit x_i . Therefore, for the case in
16 which $a = 1$, Divsalar meets this limitation.

17 318. For cases in which “ a ” is greater than one, this limitation would be met by
18 modifying the teachings of Divsalar so that each parity bit y_i is the sum of the
19 previous parity bit y_{i-1} and *multiple* information bits x_{i1} , x_{i2} , and x_{i3} . That is,
20 modifying the teachings of Divsalar so that $y_i = y_{i-1} + (x_{i1} + x_{i2} + x_{i3})$.

21 319. It would have been obvious to implement such a code by inserting a step
22 between the interleaver and the accumulator that sums consecutive groups of a
23 repeated bits. For example, for $a = 3$, this step would receive repeated information
24 bits $x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5, x_6, x_7, x_8, x_9, \dots$ and would output the sums of consecutive
groups of three repeated information bits $(x_1 + x_2 + x_3), (x_4 + x_5 + x_6), (x_7 + x_8 +$

1 x_9), These sums would then be passed to the accumulator, resulting in a code
2 where $y_i = y_{i-1} + (x_{i1} + x_{i2} + x_{i3})$, which satisfies this limitation of claim 1 of
3 the '032 patent.

4 320. As explained below with reference to the claims of the '781 patent, this
5 effect can also be achieved by "puncturing" some of the parity bits y_i output by
6 Divsalar. If two out of every three parity bits were punctured, leaving only $y_1, y_4,$
7 y_7 , etc., then each parity bit (e.g., y_4) would be the sum of the previous parity bit
8 (i.e., y_1) and a group of three information bits (i.e., $x_1 + x_2 + x_3$). Thus, this would
9 also result in a code where $y_i = y_{i-1} + (x_{i1} + x_{i2} + x_{i3})$, which satisfies this limitation
10 of claim 1 of the '032 patent. As explained below, "puncturing" parity bits would
11 have been well known to one of ordinary skill in the art (see, e.g., Frey99 at 3).

12 321. Modifying the teachings of Divsalar in this way would have been obvious in
13 view of the teachings of Luby or MacKay. As explained above Luby and MacKay
14 teach LDPC codes (see, e.g., Luby at 17:58-60, "[f]or example, a low-density
15 parity check code defined by a graph similar to that used between the other layers
16 is particularly suitable for this purpose ..."; see also, e.g., MacKay at Fig. 1). It
17 was well known in the art that LDPC codes (a.k.a. "Gallager codes") are a class of
18 high-performance error-correcting codes with desirable properties. As explained
19 above, Gallager codes had been known in the art for decades by the time the
20 patents-in-suit were filed, and had been the subject of intensive research since 1995,
21 when they were rediscovered by David J. C. MacKay. Combining the repeat-
22 accumulate codes taught by Divsalar with the LDPC codes taught by Luby and
23 MacKay to create an LDPC-accumulate coder would have been obvious to one of
24 ordinary skill in the art.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

c) "where x_{j-1} is the value of a parity bit $j-1$," and

$$\sum_{i=1}^a v_{(j-1)a+i}$$

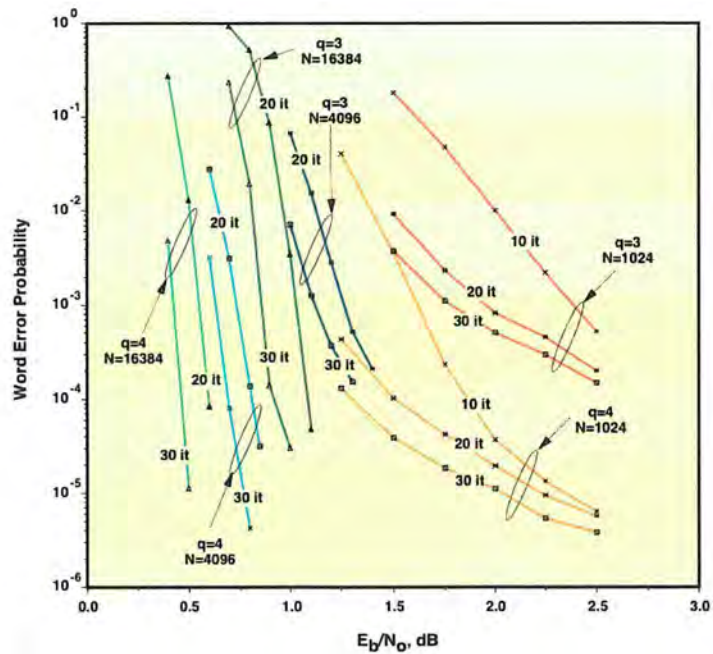
is the value of a sum of "a" randomly chosen irregular repeats of the message bits"

322. As I explain above, it would have been obvious to modify the teachings of Divsalar with the LDPC codes taught by Luby or MacKay by inserting a summation step between the interleaver and the accumulator of Divsalar. The resulting code would be a code in which $x_i = x_{i-1} + (v_{i1} + v_{i2} + v_{i3})$ (where $a = 3$). The quantity $(v_{i1} + v_{i2} + v_{i3})$ is the value of a sum of "a" repeats of the message bits. Because the bits are permuted by the interleaver prior to this step of summation, the repeated information bits v_{i1} , v_{i2} , v_{i3} are "randomly chosen," at least according to Caltech's interpretation, repeats of the message bits, as required by the claim.

323. Divsalar does not teach "irregular" repeats," as required by claim 1. However, as explained above with reference to the claims of the '710 patent, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art to combine the regular repetition of Divsalar with the irregularity of MacKay and Luby, resulting in irregular repetition.

d) "making the sequence of parity bits available for transmission in a transmission data stream"

324. Divsalar teaches this limitation. Divsalar analyzes the performance of the codes it describes, graphing the word error probability of various RA codes against various values of E_b/N_0 :



Divsalar, Fig. 5

325. The concepts of “BER” and E_b/N_0 only make sense in the context of generating codewords (including parity bits), transmitting them over a noisy channel, and decoding them at the other end. Thus, Divsalar teaches “making the sequence of parity bits available for transmission in a transmission data stream,” as required by claim 1 of the ’032 patent.⁴⁴

e) Summary

326. As explained above, the combination of Divsalar and either Luby or MacKay teaches every limitation of claim 1 of the ’032 patent.

f) Motivations to Combine

327. As explained above with reference to the claims of the ’710 patent, one of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to combine the repeat accumulate codes of Divsalar with the irregular LDPC codes taught by MacKay

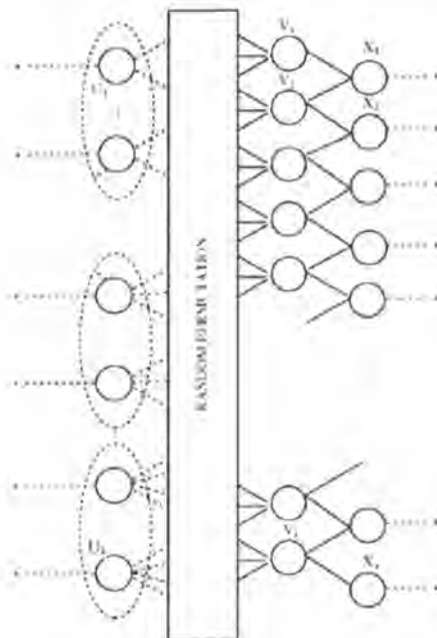
⁴⁴ This is consistent with the testimony of Dariush Divsalar (*see, e.g.*, Divsalar Tr. at 76-77).

1 and Luby, resulting in an LDPC-accumulate coder that satisfies the limitations of
2 claim 1 of the '032 patent.

3 **B. Claim 18 of the '032 Patent is Invalid**

4 328. Claim 18 of the '032 patent reads:

5 18. A device comprising:
6 a message passing decoder configured to decode a received data stream that
7 includes a collection of parity bits,
8 the message passing decoder comprising two or more check/variable nodes
9 operating in parallel to receive messages from neighboring checking/variable
10 nodes and send updated messages to the neighboring variable/check nodes,
11 wherein the message passing decoder is configured to decode the received data
12 stream that has been encoded in accordance with the following Tanner graph:



21 i) Claim 18 of the '032 Patent is Obvious over Divsalar in View of
22 Frey99, Luby, or MacKay

23 329. I explain below, one limitation at a time, why Claim 18 of the '032 patent is
24 rendered obvious by Divsalar in view of Frey99, Luby, or MacKay.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

a) "a device comprising ..."

330. The encoding methods taught by Divsalar are performed by "a device." A schematic diagram of such a device (*i.e.*, an "encoder") is shown by Divsalar, Fig. 3, reproduced below:

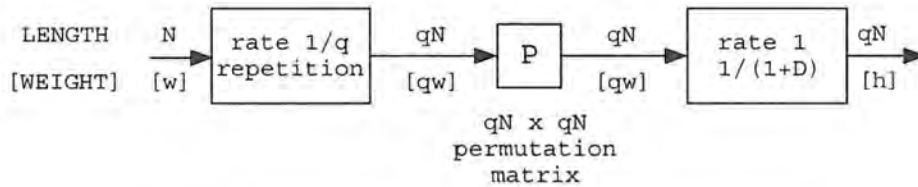


Figure 3. Encoder for a (qN, N) repeat and accumulate code. The numbers above the input-output lines indicate the length of the corresponding block, and those below the lines indicate the weight of the block.

Divsalar, Fig. 3

b) "a message passing decoder configured to decode a received data stream that includes a collection of parity bits"

331. Divsalar teaches "a message passing decoder configured to decode a received data stream that includes a collection of parity bits." Divsalar teaches that "an important feature of turbo-like codes is the availability of a simple iterative, **message passing decoding** algorithm that approximates ML decoding. We wrote a computer program to implement this "turbo-like" decoding for RA codes with $q = 3$ (rate $1/3$) and $q = 4$ (rate $1/4$), and the results are shown in Figure 5" (Divsalar at 9) (emphasis added).

332. Message passing decoders are conventional elements that were well known in the prior art.⁴⁵ A message passing decoder repeatedly calculates several related mathematical functions, where the functions are called "messages." A message passing decoder includes "variable nodes," which represent information bits, and

⁴⁵ See generally, e.g., Judea Pearl, *Reverend Bayes on Inference Engines: A Distributed Hierarchical Approach*, Proceedings of the Second National Conference on Artificial Intelligence Pittsburgh, PA 133-136 (1982) ("Pearl").

1 “check nodes,” which represent mathematical constraints that the information bits
2 must follow. Using an algorithm for decoding called “message passing decoding,”
3 messages are passed among the variable and check nodes in order to determine the
4 original values of the information bits. One of ordinary skill would understand that
5 this is what is referenced by Divsalar’s use of the term “message passing
6 decoding.”⁴⁶

7 333. Further, as explained above with reference to the asserted claims of the ’710
8 patent, the decoding methods taught by Divsalar are intended to be applied to a
9 “data stream.”

10 c) “the message passing decoder comprising two or more
11 check/variable nodes operating in parallel to receive messages
12 from neighboring checking/variable nodes and send updated
13 messages to the neighboring variable/check nodes”

14 334. This limitation is directed to features that are obvious elements in any
15 message-passing decoder, including the message-passing decoder taught by
16 Divsalar. A person of ordinary skill in the art would recognize that conventional
17 implementations of decoding by “message passing”, decoding by the “sum-product
18 algorithm”, decoding by “belief propagation”, decoding by “probability
19 propagation”, decoding a code defined by a “Tanner graph” and decoding a code
20 defined by a “factor graph” would in particular comprise two or more
21 check/variable nodes operating in parallel to receive messages from neighboring
22 check/variable nodes and send updated messages to the neighboring variable/check
23 nodes. These operations are described in several publications prior to Divsalar,
24 including in the teachings of R. G. Gallager (“Low Density Parity Check Codes”,
monograph, M.I.T. Press, 1963), of B. J. Frey and F. R. Kschischang (Presented at
the Allerton Conference in September 1995, proceedings published in May 1996),

⁴⁶ As confirmed by the testimony of Dariush Divsalar (see, e.g., Divsalar Tr. at 152-153).

1 of B. J. Frey, F. R. Kschischang, H.-A. Loeliger and N. Wiberg (Presented at the
2 Allerton Conference in September 1996, proceedings published in May 1997) and
3 of R. J. McEliece, D. J. C. Mackay and J.-F. Cheng (published in the IEEE Journal
4 on Selected Areas in Communications, February 1998). I discuss message passing
5 decoding further below with respect to Frey99, but that description of message
6 passing decoding applies here as well.

7 335. Divsalar teaches that “an important feature of turbo-like codes is the
8 availability of a simple iterative, *message passing decoding* algorithm that
9 approximates ML decoding” (Divsalar at 9) (emphasis added). The iterative
10 message-passing algorithm taught by Divsalar operates according to the principles
11 common to conventional message-passing decoders (as taught by, e.g. Pearl) and
12 therefore meets this limitation.⁴⁷

13 *d) Tanner Graph*

14 336. The Court has construed this term to require “a graph representing an IRA
15 code as a set of parity checks where every message bit is repeated, at least two
16 different subsets of message bits are repeated a different number of times, and
17 check nodes, randomly connected to the repeated message bits, enforce constraints
18 that determine the parity bits.”

19 337. As explained above, an IRA code is an “irregular repeat-accumulate” code,
20 in which information bits are irregularly repeated and optionally interleaved, with
21 the interleaved bits being passed to an accumulator, which generates the parity bits.

22 *i. Divsalar teaches every requirement of the Tanner Graph*
23 *limitation except irregularity*

24 338. Divsalar teaches repeating message bits, as required by the Court’s
construction. This is shown in Figure 3 of Divsalar, reproduced below:

⁴⁷ This is consistent with the testimony of Dariush Divsalar (see Divsalar Tr. at 152-153).

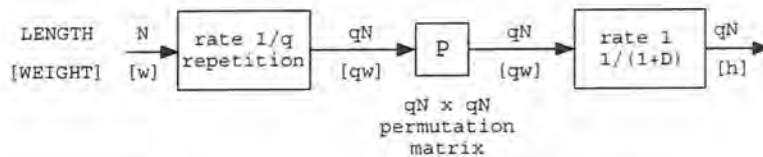


Figure 3. Encoder for a (qN, N) repeat and accumulate code. The numbers above the input-output lines indicate the length of the corresponding block, and those below the lines indicate the weight of the block.

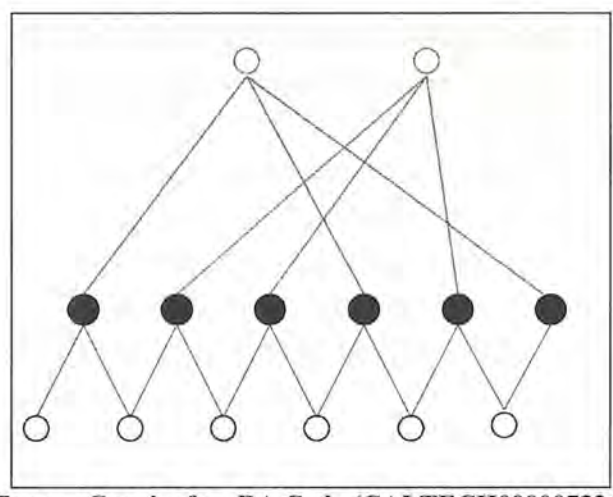
339. As explained above, a block of N information bits enters the coder at the left side of the figure and is provided to the repeater (labeled “rate $1/q$ repetition”) (Divsalar at 5). The repeater duplicates each of the N information bits q times and outputs the resulting $N \times q$ repeated bits (*id.*).

340. Divsalar also teaches “an [I]RA code as a set of parity checks ... check nodes, randomly connected to the repeated message bits, enforce constraints that determine the parity bits” required by the Court’s construction of this term. In particular, Divsalar’s interleaver disposed between the repeater and accumulator satisfies the “randomly connected” portion of the Court’s construction.⁴⁸ Further, the accumulator taught by Divsalar satisfies the “[I]RA code ... enforce constraints that determine the parity bits.” The ’032 patent itself teaches that an accumulator satisfies those constraints and therefore Divsalar’s accumulator satisfies them as well.

341. As explained above with reference to claim 1 of the ’710 patent, the drawing below represents a Tanner graph for a simple version of the RA code taught in Divsalar. That Tanner graph is “a graph representing an [I]RA code as a set of parity checks where every message bit is repeated, [at least two different subsets of message bits are repeated a different number of times,] and check nodes, randomly

⁴⁸ Again, I have interpreted “randomly connected” consistent with Caltech’s apparent application of the claim to DVB-S2 to mean implementation of an algorithm that may have been defined in advance using random operations.

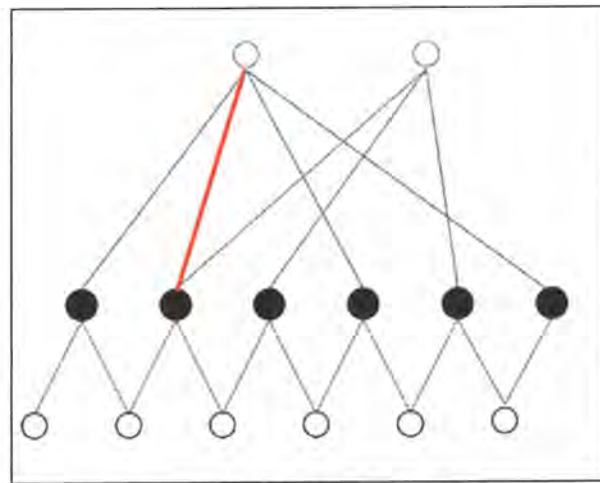
1 connected to the repeated message bits, enforce constraints that determine the
2 parity bits.” That is, the Tanner graph of Divsalar’s RA code meets all
3 requirements imposed by the Court’s construction of the Tanner graph term in
4 claim 18, except that it is regular instead of irregular. In the Tanner graph below,
5 the message bits are the two open circles at the top. They are both repeated twice.
6 The check nodes are the black circles in the middle. They are randomly connected
7 to the message bits. The open circles at the bottom represent parity bits. The
8 connections between the check nodes and the parity bits enforce constraints that
9 determine the parity bits. In particular, those constraints require the parity bits to
10 be the accumulation of the repeated, interleaved message bits.



Tanner Graph of an RA Code (CALTECH000007326)

19 342. Only a single change is required to make the Tanner graph above meet all
20 requirements imposed by the Court’s construction of the Tanner graph limitation of
21 claim 18. That is, if the repeat of the message bits is made irregular, e.g., by
22 inserting one extra edge between one of the message bits and one of the check
23 nodes (e.g., as shown by the extra red edge in the Tanner graph below) such that
24 one message bit is repeated four times instead of three, then the Tanner graph
meets all aspects of the Court’s construction.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24



Tanner Graph of an IRA Code

- ii. The irregularity required by the Tanner graph limitation is taught by Frey99, Luby, and MacKay

343. While Divsalar does not teach a scheme in which “at least two different subsets of message bits are repeated a different number of times” as required by the Court’s construction, this limitation is taught by each of Frey99, Luby, and MacKay.

344. As I have explained above, Frey99 teaches the claimed irregular repetition. Also, as explained above, Luby and MacKay also teach the benefits of irregular codes.

e) Summary

345. As explained above, every limitation of claim 18 is taught by Divsalar except the irregularity required by the Court’s construction of the Tanner graph limitation, which is taught by each of Luby, MacKay, and Frey99.

1 ii) One of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to
2 incorporate the irregularity of Frey99, Luby, or MacKay into the RA
3 codes of Divsalar

4 a) Combining the RA codes of Divsalar with the irregularity of
5 Frey99, Luby, or MacKay, generally

6 346. For the reasons explained above with reference to the asserted claims of
7 the '710 patent, it would have been obvious to incorporate irregularity (as
8 motivated by Luby, MacKay or Frey99) into the repeat-accumulate codes taught
9 by Divsalar.

10 b) Other similarities between Divsalar and each of Frey99, Luby,
11 and MacKay further motivate the combination

12 347. The motivations to combine Divsalar with any one of Frey99, Luby, or
13 MacKay references are strengthened by the fact that all four of these references
14 teach “message passing” decoders, as required by claim 18.

15 348. As described above, Divsalar teaches a message passing decoder.

16 349. Frey99 teaches a “message passing” decoder as well. The irregular
17 turbocodes of Frey99 are decoded using an interactive application of the sum-
18 product algorithm, which is a type of message-passing decoder. Frey99 states:
19 “[w]e construct irregular turbocodes with systematic bits that participate in varying
20 number of trellis sections. These codes can be decoded by the iterative application
21 of the sum-product algorithm (a low-complexity, more general form of the
22 turbodecoding algorithm)” (Frey99 at 1). A person of ordinary skill in the art
23 would recognize that an “iterative application of the sum-product algorithm,” as
24 described by Frey99, describes a “belief propagation” decoder, which is a type of
 “message passing” decoder (as shown by, e.g., claim 22 of the '032 patent). See

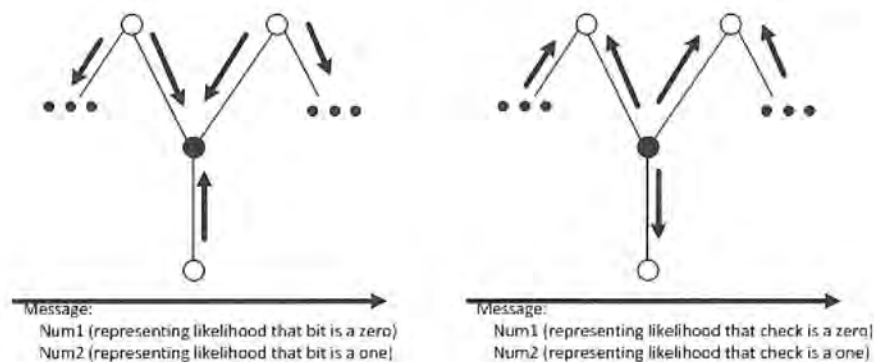
1 also Frey Slides at 3 (showing non-elite and elite bits being “pinned down
2 SLOWLY” and “pinned down QUICKLY,” respectively) (emphasis in original).⁴⁹
3 350. Conventional implementations of this kind of decoder consist of
4 check/variable nodes operating in parallel to receive messages from neighboring
5 check/variable nodes and send updated messages to the neighboring variable/check
6 nodes, as described in the teaching of B. J. Frey, F. R. Kschischang, H.-A. Loeliger
7 and N. Wiberg (presented at the Allerton Conference in September 1996,
8 proceedings published in May 1997). The message sent from a variable node to a
9 check node is comprised of one number for every possible value⁵⁰ of the variable,
10 which is computed by taking the product of the corresponding messages received
11 by the variable from other check nodes. The message sent from a check node to a
12 variable node is comprised of one number for every possible value of the variable,
13 which is computed by adding together terms that correspond to configurations of
14 all other variables connected to the check node such that the parity check is
15 satisfied, where each term is given by the product of the corresponding messages
16 received by the check node from those variable nodes. An information bit is
17 decoded by examining its corresponding variable node and for every possible value
18 of the variable computing a number by taking the product of the corresponding
19 messages received by the variable from all check nodes that it is connected to. The
20 bit is decoded by setting it to the value with the largest number. There are
21 variations on these operations that involve different ways of scaling the messages,
22 different ways of scheduling the order in which messages are updated, different

21 ⁴⁹ One of ordinary skill in the art would have recognized that “pinning down” bits refers to the
22 operation of a message passing decoder, which “pins down” an information bit by iteratively
23 applying the sum-product algorithm to the corresponding variable node.

23 ⁵⁰ In binary coding systems, such as all of the references discussed herein, each variable can have
24 only one of two possible values, i.e., 0 or 1. Thus, for any given information or parity bit, one
number is computed representing the likelihood that the bit has value 0 and another number is
computed representing the likelihood that the bit has value 1.

1 arithmetic operations that may be used, and different ways of more efficiently
2 storing the numbers comprising the messages, all of which were known to those of
3 ordinary skill before Caltech's alleged invention.

4 351. The drawing below graphically illustrates the above described operation of
5 the message passing decoding algorithm using a small portion of a Tanner graph.
6 In the drawings below, variable nodes corresponding to information and parity bits
7 are the open circles at the top and bottom of the diagram, respectively, and the
8 filled circle in the middle is a check node. In one cycle, as shown on the left,
9 each variable node computes a message and sends its message to the check nodes to
10 which it is connected. In the next cycle, as shown in the right, each check node
11 computes a message and sends its message to the variable nodes to which it is
12 connected. Several such iterations are performed, *e.g.*, until a solution stabilizes or
13 until a maximum number of iterations has been reached. Then, each information
14 or parity bit can combine multiple messages from its neighboring check nodes and
15 use those messages to determine whether its value should be zero or one.



21 352. Luby also teaches message passing decoders, stating that "[t]o properly
22 decode corrupted bits conventional *belief propagation* is utilized. *Belief*
23 *propagation* is described in detail in "The Forward-Backward Algorithm" by G.
24 David Forney, Jr. in Proceedings of the 34th Allerton Conference on

1 Communication, Control, and Computing (October, 1996), pp. 432-446” (Luby
2 18:29-38) (emphasis added). As explained above (and as confirmed by, *e.g.*, claim
3 22 of the '032 patent), a “belief propagation” decoder is a particular type of
4 “message passing” decoder.

5 353. MacKay also teaches message passing decoders, teaching codes that “can be
6 practically decoded with Gallager’s sum-product algorithm giving near Shannon
7 limit performance” (MacKay at 1449). As explained above, the “sum-product
8 algorithm” refers to a particular type of message-passing decoder.

9 **C. Claim 19 of the '032 Patent is Invalid**

10 354. Claim 19 of the '032 patent reads:

11 19. The device of claim 18, wherein the message passing decoder
12 is configured to decode the received data stream that includes the
13 message bits.

14 355. Claim 19 is rendered obvious by Divsalar in combination with one of Frey99,
15 Luby, or MacKay, alone or further in combination with Ping ((Divsalar + (Frey99,
16 Luby or MacKay)) alone or (Divsalar + (Frey99, Luby or MacKay) + Ping)).

17 356. I explain above that Divsalar in combination with one of Frey99, Luby, or
18 MacKay renders obvious every limitation of Claim 18.

19 357. Frey99 explicitly teaches transmitting the message bits as well as the parity
20 bits. “In particular, if the bits in the convolutional code are partitioned into
21 “systematic bits” and “parity bits”, then by connecting each parity bit to a degree 1
22 codeword bit, we can encode in linear time” (Frey99 at 2). It was widely accepted
23 at the time that “systematic bits” refers to message bits that are transmitted.

24 MacKay also teaches transmitting message bits (*see* MacKay at Fig. 5, showing
“[b]its $t_1 \dots t_k$ defined to be source bits”). Further, both systematic and non-
systematic codes were known long before Caltech’s alleged invention. As an

1 example, Berrou's original disclosure of turbocodes was of a systematic code.⁵¹ In
 2 Berrou's Figure 2, copied below, the arrow at the top pointing to the right
 3 represents transmission of the information bits, making the code a systematic code.

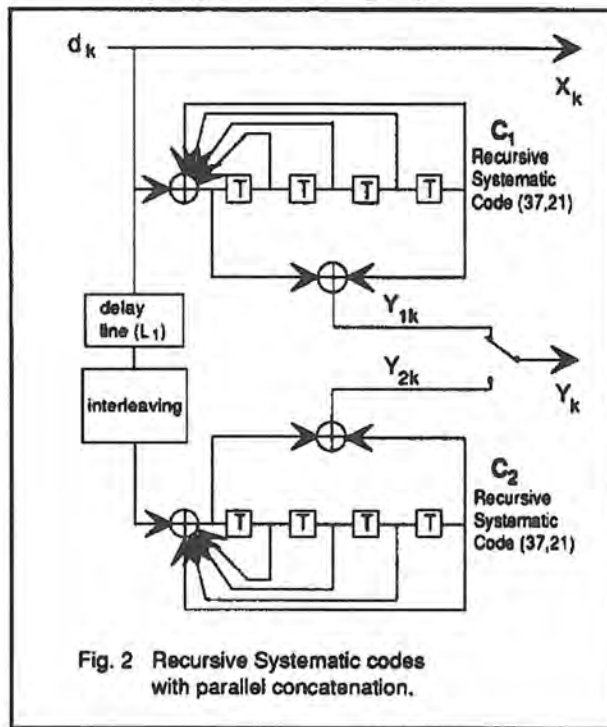


Fig. 2 Recursive Systematic codes with parallel concatenation.

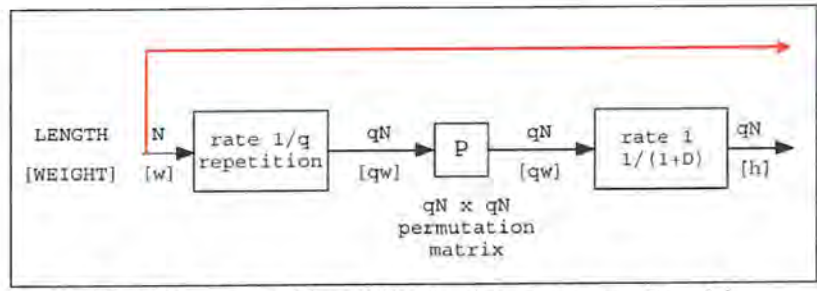
Berrou, Figure 2

16 358. One of ordinary skill reading Divsalar or Luby would have understood that
 17 making the disclosed codes be systematic instead of non-systematic would have
 18 simple and obvious. Figure 3 of Divsalar is copied again below with an added red
 19 line to indicate the change to Divsalar that would make its code be systematic
 20 instead of non-systematic.⁵²

21
 22
 23 ⁵¹ Claude Berrou et al., *Near Shannon Limit Error-Correcting Coding and Decoding: Turbo Codes*, 2 IEEE International Conference on Communications, ICC '93 Geneva. Technical Program, Conference Record 1064 (1993); '032 patent, 1:29-56.

24 ⁵² This is consistent with the testimony of Dariush Divsalar (see Divsalar Tr. at 67-68).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24



Divsalar, Figure 3 (modified to show a systematic code)

359. While Divsalar and Luby do not explicitly teach decoding a received data stream that “includes the message bits” (*i.e.*, decoding a *systematic* code) this limitation would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in view of those references alone. As explained above, Frey99 and MacKay both explicitly teach systematic codes.

360. Moreover, systematic codes are taught by Ping. Ping defines a “codeword \mathbf{c} as $\mathbf{c} = [\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{d}]$, where \mathbf{p} and \mathbf{d} contain the parity and information bits, respectively” (Ping at 38). Ping goes on to provide equations from which “ $\mathbf{p} = \{p_i\}$ ” can easily be calculated from a given $\mathbf{d} = \{d_i\}$ ” (*id.*). Thus, the codewords of Ping, which collectively comprise the “data stream” received by the decoder, include the information bits \mathbf{d} .

361. As explained above, Frey99 and MacKay teach systematic codes, but additionally, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art to modify any of Divsalar or Luby to make the code be systematic. Moreover, it would have further been obvious to incorporate Ping’s teaching of systematic codes into Divsalar. Systematic codes had been well known in the art for decades prior to the claimed priority date of the patents-in-suit (*see, e.g.*, Wicker Dep. at 77:15-20). It would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art that the techniques taught by Divsalar (as well as those taught by Frey99, Luby, and MacKay) can be applied equally to both systematic and non-systematic codes.

1 362. As described above, Divsalar, Frey99, Luby, and MacKay are directed to the
2 same field, namely the field of error correcting codes, and specifically, variations
3 and improvements on linear error-correcting codes that allow them to be encoded
4 more quickly. Ping is related to the same field; Ping, titled “Low Density Parity
5 Check Codes with Semirandom Parity Check Matrix,” teaches constructing LDPC
6 codes that can be encoded efficiently and have good BER vs. E_b/N_0 performance
7 (*see* Ping at 39). Given that all four of these references relate to improvements to
8 error-correcting codes, one of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated
9 to combine the teachings of Ping with those of Divsalar and at least one of Frey99,
Luby, or MacKay.

10 363. Therefore, claim 19 is obvious over Divsalar in combination with one of
11 Frey99, Luby, or MacKay, alone or further in combination with Ping.

12 **D. Claim 22 of the '032 Patent is Invalid**

13 364. Claim 22 of the '032 patent reads:

14 22. The device of claim 18, wherein the message passing decoder
15 comprises a belief propagation decoder.

16 365. Claim 22 is rendered obvious by Divsalar in combination with one of Frey99,
Luby, or MacKay.

17 366. I explain above that Divsalar in combination with any one of Frey99, Luby
18 or MacKay teaches every limitation of claim 18.

19 367. The additional limitation imposed by claim 22 (*i.e.*, that the decoder
20 comprise “a belief propagation decoder”) is taught by Divsalar. Divsalar teaches
21 that “an important feature of turbo-like codes is the availability of a simple
22 *iterative, message passing* decoding algorithm that approximates ML decoding.”
23 (Divsalar at 9) (emphasis added). A person of ordinary skill in the art would
24 recognize that the “iterative message passing” algorithm described in the above
passage refers to a “belief propagation decoder.”

1 368. As explained above with reference to claim 18, Frey99, Luby, and MacKay
 2 also teach belief propagation decoders, as required by claim 22. For example,
 3 Luby states that “[t]o properly decode corrupted bits conventional *belief*
 4 *propagation* is utilized. *Belief propagation* is described in detail in "The Forward-
 5 Backward Algorithm" by G. David Forney, Jr. in Proceedings of the 34th Allerton
 6 Conference on Communication, Control, and Computing (October, 1996), pp. 432-
 446” (Luby 18:29-38) (emphasis added).

7 369. Therefore, claim 22 is obvious over Divsalar in view of any one of Frey99,
 8 Luby, or MacKay.

9 **VIII. THE ASSERTED CLAIMS OF THE '781 PATENT ARE INVALID**

10 370. As I explain below, asserted claims 16 and 19 of the '781 patent are invalid.
 11 I also explain why claims 13, 14, and 15, from which claim 16 depends, are invalid.
 12 A summary of the opinions set forth in this section is given in the table below:

'781 Claim	Divsalar	Ping	Ping + MacKay	Divsalar + Frey99 (or Frey slides), or MacKay	Divsalar + Luby + (Ping, Frey99, MacKay or '999 Patent)
13	Anticipated / Obvious		Obvious	Obvious	Obvious (over Divsalar + Frey99)
14	Anticipated / Obvious		Obvious	Obvious	Obvious (over Divsalar + Frey99)
15	Obvious		Obvious	Obvious	Obvious
16	Obvious		Obvious	Obvious	Obvious
19	Anticipated / Obvious	Anticipated	Anticipated (by Ping)	Anticipated (by Divsalar)	Anticipated / Obvious (by Divsalar and Ping)

19 **A. Claim 13 of the '781 Patent is Invalid**

20 371. Claim 13 of the '781 patent reads:

21 13. A method of encoding a signal, comprising:
 22 receiving a block of data in the signal to be encoded, the block of
 data including information bits; and
 23 performing an encoding operation using the information bits as an
 input, the encoding operation including an accumulation of mod-2
 24

1 or exclusive-OR sums of bits in subsets of the information bits, the
2 encoding operation generating at least a portion of a codeword,
3 wherein the information bits appear in a variable number of subsets.

4 i) Claim 13 of the '781 Patent is Anticipated by Divsalar

5 372. I explain below, one limitation at a time, why claim 13 is anticipated by
6 Divsalar.

7 a) "A method of encoding a signal"

8 373. Even if the preamble, "[a] method of encoding a signal," limits the claim, it
9 is taught by Divsalar, as explained above with reference to the asserted claims of
10 the '710 patent.

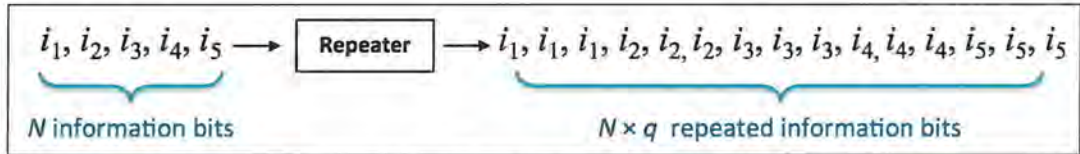
11 b) "receiving a block of data in the signal to be encoded, the block
12 of data including information bits"

13 374. Divsalar teaches this limitation. As explained above with reference to
14 the '710 patent, Divsalar deals exclusively with block codes. The repeat-
15 accumulate codes introduced by Divsalar are encoded by receiving an "information
16 block of length N " and passing the block to the repeater. See Divsalar at 5 ("[a]n
17 information block of length N is repeated q times...") and, for example, Figure 3,
18 reproduced above. Divsalar refers to the input block as an "information block"
19 because it includes information bits.

20 c) "performing an encoding operation using the information bits as
21 an input, the encoding operation including an accumulation of
22 mod-2 or exclusive-OR sums of bits in subsets of the information
23 bits, the encoding operation generating at least a portion of a
24 codeword"

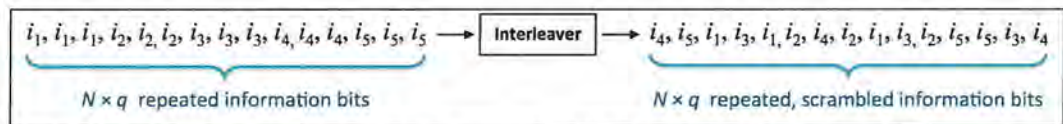
25 375. Divsalar teaches this limitation. As explained above, Figure 3 of Divsalar
26 depicts an encoder that is operable to perform an encoding operation in which an
27 "information block of length N " is fed into a repeater, which repeats each of the N

1 information bits q times, producing a total of $N \times q$ repeated bits. This process is
 2 illustrated below for $N = 5$, and $q = 3$:⁵³



6 **Example of Repetition as Described in Divsalar, with $N=5$ and $q=3$**

7 376. Figure 3 of Divsalar, reproduced above, shows a “permutation matrix” (the
 8 box labeled “P”). After the repeater duplicates each of the N information bits q
 9 times and outputs $N \times q$ repeated bits, the repeated bits are “scrambled by an
 10 interleaver of size qN ” (Divsalar at 5). Continuing the example above, with $N = 5$
 and $q = 3$, the interleaving process may be illustrated as follows:



14 **Example of Interleaving as Described in Divsalar, with $N=5$ and $q=3$**

15 The example interleaving shown in the figure above illustrates just one of many
 16 permutations that may be used to scramble the repeated information bits. One of
 17 ordinary skill in the art would understand that the interleaver shown in Figure 3 of
 Divsalar would be prefabricated or preprogrammed to implement one of the
 possible permutations.

18 377. As explained above, the repeated, scrambled information bits are then
 19 *accumulated*. Divsalar explains the accumulate step as follows:

20 [W]e prefer to think of [the accumulator] as a block coder whose
 21 input block $[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ and output block $[y_1, \dots, y_n]$ are related by
 the formula

$$y_1 = x_1$$

$$y_2 = x_1 + x_2$$

23 ⁵³ Divsalar explicitly discloses, e.g., in Figure 5, several values for N and q . Divsalar’s values of
 24 N are much larger than 5, but I have used $N = 5$ in this example for ease of exposition. RA codes
 with $q = 3$ are explicitly disclosed by Divsalar.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

$$y_3 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3$$
$$y_n = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \dots + x_n$$

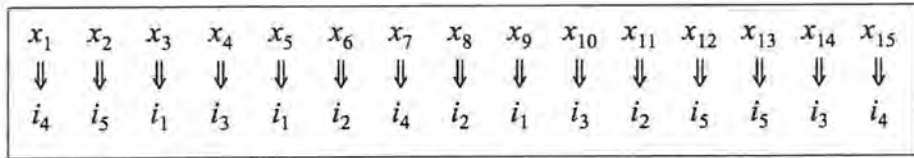
(Divsalar at 5)

378. This accumulation operation operates on “sums of bits in subsets of the information bits.” To explain why this is the case, I will continue the example above (with $N = 5$ and $q = 3$).

379. In our example, $N = 5$ and $q = 3$, so the accumulator will accept 15 x bits as input, and produce 15 y bits as output. The excerpt from Divsalar above provides explicit equations for $y_1, y_2,$ and $y_3,$ and a general equation for each y_n thereafter. Writing these equations out explicitly for each of the 15 y bits yields the following 15 equations:

$$y_1 = x_1$$
$$y_2 = x_1 + x_2$$
$$y_3 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3$$
$$y_4 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4$$
$$y_5 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5$$
$$y_6 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6$$
$$y_7 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7$$
$$y_8 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8$$
$$y_9 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8 + x_9$$
$$y_{10} = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8 + x_9 + x_{10}$$
$$y_{11} = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8 + x_9 + x_{10} + x_{11}$$
$$y_{12} = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8 + x_9 + x_{10} + x_{11} + x_{12}$$
$$y_{13} = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8 + x_9 + x_{10} + x_{11} + x_{12} + x_{13}$$
$$y_{14} = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8 + x_9 + x_{10} + x_{11} + x_{12} + x_{13} + x_{14}$$
$$y_{15} = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8 + x_9 + x_{10} + x_{11} + x_{12} + x_{13} + x_{14} + x_{15}$$

380. As explained above, the x bits taught by Divsalar are repeated, interleaved information bits. Each x bit (such as, *e.g.*, x_3) is a duplicate of one of the information bits. For example, continuing our interleaving example above, the correspondence between x bits and i bits is as follows:



Correspondence between repeated, scrambled information bits x and information bits i

As the figure above shows, each i bit corresponds to exactly 3 x bits (because every information bit is duplicated $q=3$ times before interleaving). For example, the three duplicates of the 4th information bit i_4 are x_1 , x_7 , and x_{15} .

381. Continuing our example, we can substitute each of the x variables in the 15 equations above for the corresponding i bit, yielding:

$$y_1 = i_4$$

$$y_2 = i_4 + i_5$$

$$y_3 = i_4 + i_5 + i_1$$

$$y_4 = i_4 + i_5 + i_1 + i_3$$

$$y_5 = i_4 + i_5 + i_1 + i_3 + i_1$$

$$y_6 = i_4 + i_5 + i_1 + i_3 + i_1 + i_2$$

$$y_7 = i_4 + i_5 + i_1 + i_3 + i_1 + i_2 + i_4$$

$$y_8 = i_4 + i_5 + i_1 + i_3 + i_1 + i_2 + i_4 + i_2$$

$$y_9 = i_4 + i_5 + i_1 + i_3 + i_1 + i_2 + i_4 + i_2 + i_1$$

$$y_{10} = i_4 + i_5 + i_1 + i_3 + i_1 + i_2 + i_4 + i_2 + i_1 + i_3$$

$$y_{11} = i_4 + i_5 + i_1 + i_3 + i_1 + i_2 + i_4 + i_2 + i_1 + i_3 + i_2$$

$$y_{12} = i_4 + i_5 + i_1 + i_3 + i_1 + i_2 + i_4 + i_2 + i_1 + i_3 + i_2 + i_5$$

$$y_{13} = i_4 + i_5 + i_1 + i_3 + i_1 + i_2 + i_4 + i_2 + i_1 + i_3 + i_2 + i_5 + i_5$$

$$y_{14} = i_4 + i_5 + i_1 + i_3 + i_1 + i_2 + i_4 + i_2 + i_1 + i_3 + i_2 + i_5 + i_5 + i_3$$

$$y_{15} = i_4 + i_5 + i_1 + i_3 + i_1 + i_2 + i_4 + i_2 + i_1 + i_3 + i_2 + i_5 + i_5 + i_3 + i_4$$

382. In modulo-2 addition, adding a bit to itself always results in 0; that is, two identical information bits cancel each other out. Therefore, if an information bit appears an even number of times in one of the equations above, it cancels out entirely, and if it appears an odd number of times, it effectively appears only once. Performing these cancellations yields:

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

Explicit Equation	Recursive Equation
$y_1 = i_4$	$y_1 = i_4$
$y_2 = i_4 + i_5$	$y_2 = y_1 + i_5$
$y_3 = i_4 + i_5 + i_1$	$y_3 = y_2 + i_1$
$y_4 = i_4 + i_5 + i_1 + i_3$	$y_4 = y_3 + i_3$
$y_5 = i_4 + i_5 + i_3$	$y_5 = y_4 + i_1$
$y_6 = i_4 + i_5 + i_3 + i_2$	$y_6 = y_5 + i_2$
$y_7 = i_5 + i_3 + i_2$	$y_7 = y_6 + i_4$
$y_8 = i_5 + i_3$	$y_8 = y_7 + i_2$
$y_9 = i_5 + i_3 + i_1$	$y_9 = y_8 + i_1$
$y_{10} = i_5 + i_1$	$y_{10} = y_9 + i_3$
$y_{11} = i_5 + i_1 + i_2$	$y_{11} = y_{10} + i_2$
$y_{12} = i_1 + i_2$	$y_{12} = y_{11} + i_5$
$y_{13} = i_1 + i_2 + i_5$	$y_{13} = y_{12} + i_5$
$y_{14} = i_1 + i_2 + i_5 + i_3$	$y_{14} = y_{13} + i_3$
$y_{15} = i_1 + i_2 + i_5 + i_3 + i_4$	$y_{15} = y_{14} + i_4$

383. The above table includes explicit and recursive equations for each of the y bits. The explicit equations on the left show that the y bits are “sums of bits in subsets of the information bits.” For example, y_{14} is the sum of bits in the subset of the information bits containing i_1, i_2, i_5 and i_3 . The recursive equations on the right illustrate that the process of computing the y bits using an “accumulation” operation in which each of the y bits (except the first) is the sum of the previous y bit and an i bit.

384. Therefore, as this example shows, the encoding shown in Figure 3 of Divsalar is an accumulation of “sums of bits in subsets of the information bits” (*i.e.*, the subsets of the i bits that appear in each of the explicit equations).

385. Because all of the variables in the above equations are bits, the “+” sign in Divsalar represents modulo-2 addition, or “exclusive-OR,” as required by this

1 limitation. Further, because the y bits are the output of the encoding process,
2 accumulation is the last step in the encoding process, the y bits form a codeword.

3 386. Therefore, for the reasons explained above, Divsalar teaches “performing an
4 encoding operation using the information bits as an input, the encoding operation
5 including an accumulation of mod-2 or exclusive-OR sums of bits in subsets of the
6 information bits, the encoding operation generating at least a portion of a
7 codeword,” as required by claim 13 of the '781 patent.

8 387. Alternatively, a punctured version of the Divsalar code would satisfy the
9 requirement of claim 13 that “the encoding operation include[e] an accumulation
10 of mod-2 or exclusive-OR sums of bits in subsets of the information bits, the
11 encoding operation generating at least a portion of a codeword.” As explained
12 above, the accumulation of Divsalar can be represented using the following
13 equations:

$$y_1 = x_1$$

$$y_2 = x_1 + x_2$$

$$y_3 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3$$

$$y_4 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4$$

$$y_5 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5$$

$$y_6 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6$$

$$y_7 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7$$

$$y_8 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8$$

$$y_9 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8 + x_9$$

$$y_{10} = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8 + x_9 + x_{10}$$

$$y_{11} = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8 + x_9 + x_{10} + x_{11}$$

$$y_{12} = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8 + x_9 + x_{10} + x_{11} + x_{12}$$

$$y_{13} = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8 + x_9 + x_{10} + x_{11} + x_{12} + x_{13}$$

$$y_{14} = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8 + x_9 + x_{10} + x_{11} + x_{12} + x_{13} + x_{14}$$

$$y_{15} = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8 + x_9 + x_{10} + x_{11} + x_{12} + x_{13} + x_{14} + x_{15}$$

1 Outputting some, but not all of the parity bits y_i would result in a code in which
2 each parity bit is the sum of the previous parity bit and the sum of the bits in a
3 subset of the information bits. For example, if only y_1 , y_7 , y_9 , and y_{15} were output
4 by the encoder, the resulting code could be described using the following 4
5 equations:

$$y_1 = x_1$$

$$y_7 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7$$

$$y_9 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8 + x_9$$

$$y_{15} = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5 + x_6 + x_7 + x_8 + x_9 + x_{10} + x_{11} + x_{12} + x_{13} + x_{14} + x_{15}$$

8 Substituting the explicit equations from the table above would yield

$$y_1 = i_4$$

$$y_7 = i_5 + i_3 + i_2$$

$$y_9 = i_5 + i_3 + i_1$$

$$y_{15} = i_1 + i_2 + i_5 + i_3 + i_4$$

12 In other words,

$$y_1 = i_4$$

$$y_7 = y_1 + (i_4 + i_5 + i_3 + i_2)$$

$$y_9 = y_7 + (i_2 + i_1)$$

$$y_{15} = y_9 + (i_4 + i_2)$$

16 Here, each parity bit, (e.g., y_9) is calculated as the accumulation of the previous
17 parity bit (i.e., y_7) and the sum of a subset of the information bits (i.e., $i_2 + i_1$).

18 Outputting only some of the parity bits of Divsalar, while omitting others, is a
19 technique called “puncturing,” that was well known in the art by Caltech’s alleged
20 conception date (see, e.g., Frey99 at 3, “... some extra parity bits must be
21 punctured”).

22 d) “wherein the information bits appear in a variable number of
subsets”

23 388. As explained above, the encoding operation of Divsalar includes an
24 accumulation of mod-2 sums of bits in subsets of information bits. One example

1 of such an accumulation, for $N = 5$, $q = 3$ and a particular interleaver, is given by
2 the explicit equations given in the table above, namely:

3 $y_1 = i_4$
4 $y_2 = i_4 + i_5$
5 $y_3 = i_4 + i_5 + i_1$
6 $y_4 = i_4 + i_5 + i_1 + i_3$
7 $y_5 = i_4 + i_5 + i_3$
8 $y_6 = i_4 + i_5 + i_3 + i_2$
9 $y_7 = i_5 + i_3 + i_2$
10 $y_8 = i_5 + i_3$
11 $y_9 = i_5 + i_3 + i_1$
12 $y_{10} = i_5 + i_1$
13 $y_{11} = i_5 + i_1 + i_2$
14 $y_{12} = i_1 + i_2$
15 $y_{13} = i_1 + i_2 + i_5$
16 $y_{14} = i_1 + i_2 + i_5 + i_3$
17 $y_{15} = i_1 + i_2 + i_5 + i_3 + i_4$

18 Here, each bit y of the codeword is the sum of a different subset of information bits
19 (denoted using the letter i).

20 389. As these equations show, different information bits appear in different
21 numbers of subsets. For example, the information bit i_4 appears in seven of the
22 equations above, while the information bit i_1 appears in nine of the equations.⁵⁴
23 Also, while the equations above result from using an interleaver that scrambles bits
24 according to one particular permutation, different information bits will appear in
different numbers of subsets no matter how the bits are permuted by the interleaver.
In particular, for some of the example values of N and q explicitly disclosed in
Divsalar in Figure 5, *e.g.*, $N = 1024$ and $q = 3$, regardless of what interleaver is
used, the information bits will appear in a variable number of subsets. Thus,

⁵⁴ Because the “subsets” are the groups of i bits that appear on the right-hand side of each of the equations above, if an i bit appears in an equation, it is a member of the corresponding subset.

1 Divsalar teaches that the information bits appear in variable numbers of subsets, as
2 required by the claim.

3 390. This limitation also holds for the “punctured” version of Divsalar discussed
4 above. For example, it holds for the example given above, where the parity bits
5 are represented by the equations:

$$y_1 = i_4$$

$$y_7 = y_1 + (i_4 + i_5 + i_3 + i_2)$$

$$y_9 = y_7 + (i_2 + i_1)$$

$$y_{15} = y_9 + (i_4 + i_2)$$

6
7
8 Here, the information bits appear in a variable number of subsets. The information
9 bit i_4 , for example, appears in three subsets, while the information bit i_5 appears in
10 only one.

11 e) Summary

12 391. As explained above, Divsalar teaches every limitation of claim 13 and
13 therefore anticipates claim 13.

14 ii) Claim 13 of the '781 Patent is Obvious over Divsalar in View any
15 one of Frey99, Luby, or MacKay

16 392. As explained above, Divsalar teaches every limitation of, and therefore
17 anticipates, claim 13 of the '781 patent. However, in the event Divsalar is found
18 not to teach the “wherein the information bits appear in a variable number of
19 subsets” limitation of claim 13, then claim 13 is obvious over the combination of
20 Divsalar and any one of Frey99, Luby or MacKay.

21 393. Specifically, if the term “wherein the information bits appear in a variable
22 number of subsets,” is interpreted to require that the claimed encoding method be
23
24

1 *irregular*, then each of Frey99, Luby, and MacKay teaches this limitation.⁵⁵ As I
2 explain above, one of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to
3 combine Divsalar and Frey99, Luby or MacKay in general, and would specifically
4 have been motivated to use the irregular repetition of Frey99, or the irregularity of
5 Luby and MacKay, with the RA codes of Divsalar. I also explain why such a
6 combination would represent a minor modification to the teachings of Divsalar,
7 and would not fundamentally change its principle of operation.

8 394. For at least the reasons given above, claim 13 is obvious over the
9 combination of Divsalar and any one of Frey99, Luby and MacKay.

10 iii) Claim 13 of the '781 Patent is Obvious over Ping in View of
11 MacKay

12 395. I explain below, one limitation at a time, why claim 13 is rendered obvious
13 by Ping in combination with MacKay.⁵⁶

14 a) "A method of encoding a signal, comprising ..."

15 396. Ping teaches the preamble. As I explain above, Ping teaches constructing
16 LDPC codes that can be encoded in two stages. In the first encoding stage, a
17 generator matrix is applied to a sequence of information bits to produce sums of
18 information bits. In the second stage, the sums of information bits are accumulated
19 recursively to generate the parity bits (*see* Ping at 38).

20 ⁵⁵ As noted above, during prosecution of the '781 patent, the applicant edited claims 9 and 23
21 effectively replacing "irregular" with "variable number of subsets." Response dated January 27,
22 2011, at 3 and 5-6. In its remarks regarding that amendment, the applicant stated, "It is believed
23 that the meaning of the term 'irregular' in the claims is clear and is well known in the art...
24 However, claims have been amended to recite '...wherein the information bits appear in a
variable number of subsets' to obviate the objections." Response dated January 27, 2011, at 7
(emphasis original). In view of this file history, Caltech may argue that "variable number of
subsets" requires irregularity. However, the applicant may have simply been broadening the
claims when it replaced "irregular" with "variable number of subsets." In any case, the claims
do not clearly require irregularity. However, for the sake of completeness, I have addressed the
term under the two possible interpretations herein, one in which irregularity is required and one
in which it is not.

⁵⁶ See generally Divsalar Tr. at 61:15-71:11.

1 397. A person of ordinary skill in the art would recognize that encoding/decoding
2 signals is the purpose of the “LDPC + accumulate” codes taught by Ping.

3 b) “receiving a block of data in the signal to be encoded, the block
4 of data including information bits”

5 398. Ping teaches this limitation. Ping deals exclusively with block codes, as I
6 explain above. Specifically, Ping denotes the block of information bits to be
7 encoded using the vector variable name \mathbf{d} (see Ping at 38, “[d]ecompose the
8 codeword \mathbf{c} as $\mathbf{c} = [\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{d}]$, where \mathbf{p} and \mathbf{d} contain the parity and information bits,
9 respectively”). Ping goes on to provide equations from which “ $\mathbf{p} = \{p_i\}$ can easily
10 be calculated from a given $\mathbf{d} = \{d_i\}$.” That is, Ping provides equations that describe
11 the process of *encoding* a block of information bits \mathbf{d} , as required by this limitation
12 (*id.*). Thus, the vector of information bits \mathbf{d} is a “block of data in the signal to be
13 encoded, the block of data including information bits.”

14 c) “performing an encoding operation using the information bits as
15 an input, the encoding operation including an accumulation of
16 mod-2 or exclusive-OR sums of bits in subsets of the information
17 bits, the encoding operation generating at least a portion of a
18 codeword”

19 399. Ping teaches this limitation. Specifically, Ping teaches an encoding
20 operation that calculates the parity bits $\{p_i\}$ using the information bits $\{d_i\}$ as input.
21 Ping’s encoding scheme is encapsulated by the following equations:
22

$$23 \quad p_1 = \sum_j h_{1j}^d d_j$$
$$24 \quad p_i = p_{i-1} + \sum_j h_{ij}^d d_j$$

(Ping at 38)

400. In these equations, the variable h_{ij}^d represents the value at the i^{th} row and the j^{th} column of the parity check matrix \mathbf{H}^d , and the variable d_j represents the value of the j^{th} information bit (*see id.*). Thus, the summation

$$\sum_j h_{ij}^d d_j$$

represents the sum of the bits in a subset of information bits. Specifically, it represents the sum of the subset of information bits d_j where $h_{ij}^d = 1$. As Ping explains, there are $kt/(n-k)$ information bits in each row of the parity check matrix, meaning that there $kt/(n-k)$ bits in each subset of the information bits (*id.*).

401. Further, the encoding taught by Ping includes an accumulation of these sums of bits in subsets of the information bits. The first parity bit of Ping, p_1 , is calculated as the sum of a subset of information bits. As illustrated in the color-coded equation below, each subsequent parity bit p_i is calculated by adding together the previous parity bit p_{i-1} (shown in blue) and the sum of bits in a subset of information bits (shown in red):

$$p_i = p_{i-1} + \sum_j h_{ij}^d d_j$$

I explain above that this type of operation, in which each new element is calculated by adding something to the previous element, is called an “accumulation.”

402. Also, the addition taught by Ping is modulo-2 or “mod-2” addition (which is the same operation as “exclusive-OR”). When the addition symbol “+” and the summation symbol “ Σ ” have bits as operands, as they do here, one of ordinary skill

1 in the art would understand that these symbols refer to modulo-2 addition and
2 modulo-2 summation, respectively.

3 403. When complete, this process produces the parity bits $\{p_i\}$ which, as Ping
4 explains, is a portion of the codeword " $\mathbf{c} = [\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{d}]$, where \mathbf{p} and \mathbf{d} contain the parity
5 and information bits, respectively" (Ping at 38).

6 *d) "wherein the information bits appear in a variable number of*
7 *subsets"*

8 404. As explained above, MacKay teaches implementing parity-check matrices in
9 which every information bit corresponds to a column, where the weight of that
10 column (*i.e.*, the number of 1s contained in that column of the parity-check matrix)
11 represents the degree of the information bit.

12 405. As explained above, MacKay teaches parity-check matrices for which each
13 column corresponds to an information bit or a parity bit, and each row corresponds
14 to a parity check: "[t]he parity check matrix of a code can be viewed as defining a
15 bipartite graph with 'bit' vertices corresponding to the columns and 'check'
16 vertices corresponding to the rows. Each nonzero entry in the matrix corresponds
17 to an edge connecting a bit to a check. The profile specifies the degrees of the
18 vertices in this graph" (MacKay at 1449-1450).

19 406. Thus, each row in the parity-check matrices of MacKay corresponds to a
20 subset of information bits that are summed during the encoding process. In a given
21 row, if the entry corresponding to an information bit is a 1, that information bit is a
22 member of the subset. If the entry corresponding to an information bit is 0, the
23 information bit is not a member of the subset.

24 407. In the parity-check matrices of MacKay, the number of ones in a column
that corresponds to an information bit (*i.e.*, the column weight) equals to the
number of times that information bit appears in a subset. MacKay also notes that

1 “[t]he best known binary Gallager codes are *irregular* codes whose parity check
2 matrices have *nonuniform* weight per column,” meaning that the best codes are
3 those in which the information bits appear in a variable number of subsets (Mackay
4 at 1449) (emphasis in original).

5 *e) Summary*

6 408. As explained above, the combination of Ping and Mackay teaches every
7 limitation of claim 13 of the '781 patent.

8 *f) Motivations to Combine the teachings of Ping with those of
9 MacKay*

10 409. As I explain above, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in
11 the art to combine the LDPC-accumulate coders of Ping with the irregularity of
12 MacKay. Specifically, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the
13 art to incorporate irregularity into the LDPC-accumulate coders of Ping by making
14 the column weights of the parity check matrix \mathbf{H}^d that correspond to information
15 bits nonuniform, resulting in a code in which “the information bits appear in a
16 variable number of subsets,” as required by claim 13.

17 410. It would have been obvious to incorporate MacKay’s irregularity into Ping
18 because the two codes are so similar and it was known that irregularity improves
19 coding as explained above. Alternatively, it would have been obvious to
20 incorporate Ping’s accumulate stage into MacKay. MacKay’s irregular LDPC
21 code teaches all limitations of claim 13 of the '781 patent except the “accumulation”
22 limitation (i.e., as explained above, MacKay teaches (a) block codes and therefore
23 teaches the “receiving” limitation, (b) LDPC codes and therefore teaches
24 computing parity bits that are sums of bits in subsets of the information bits, and (c)
irregular codes and therefore teaches the “information bits appear in a variable
number of subsets” limitation). However, both Ping and Divsalar taught the
benefit of adding an accumulation stage to an outer encoder. Thus, regardless of

1 whether one of ordinary skill incorporated MacKay's irregularity into Ping or
2 Ping's accumulator into MacKay, the combination of Ping and MacKay renders
3 claim 13 of the '781 patent obvious.

4 **B. Claim 14 of the '781 Patent is Invalid**

5 411. Claim 14 of the '781 patent reads:

6 14. The method of claim 13, further comprising: outputting the
7 codeword, wherein the codeword comprises parity bits.

8 a) Claim 14 is Anticipated by Divsalar, and rendered obvious by a
9 combination of Divsalar and Frey99, Luby, or MacKay

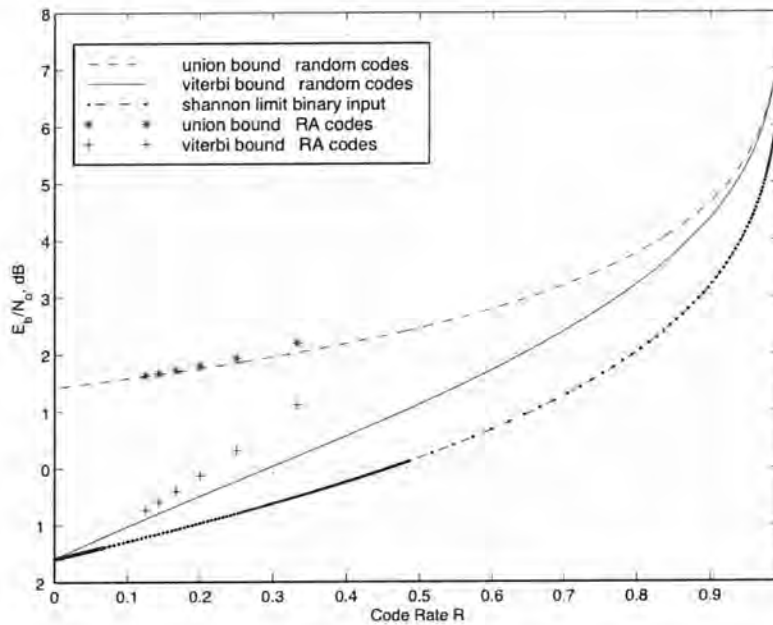
10 412. Claim 14 is anticipated by Divsalar, and is obvious over Divsalar in view of
11 any one of Frey99, Luby or MacKay. As I explain above, claim 13 of the '781
12 patent is anticipated by Divsalar, and rendered obvious by a combination of
13 Divsalar and any one of Frey99, Luby, or MacKay. Claim 14 adds to claim 13
14 "outputting the codeword, wherein the codeword comprises parity bits." Divsalar,
15 Frey99, Luby, and MacKay all teach methods of encoding signals that comprise
16 outputting a codeword that comprises parity bits.

17 413. As explained above, the encoder shown in Figure 3 of Divsalar, reproduced
18 above, produces an "**output** block [y_1, \dots, y_n]" of parity bits that is included in the
19 codeword (Divsalar at 5) (emphasis added).

20 414. Divsalar also describes the performance of the RA codes it teaches by
21 graphing the code rate R against the normalized signal-to-noise ratio E_b/N_0 .⁵⁷

22
23
24 ⁵⁷ The normalized signal-to-noise ratio E_b/N_0 is described in detail above and in Appendix A.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24



Divsalar, Figure 4

The concept of E_b/N_0 only makes sense in the context of outputting codewords, transmitting them over a noisy channel, and decoding them at the other end.

415. As described above, the irregular turbocoding techniques taught by Frey99 also involve outputting a codeword that comprises parity bits (*see generally*, Frey99 at 1-4). *See also* Frey Slides at 4-5. Like Divsalar, Frey99 includes experimental results; it includes a plot of BER against E_b/N_0 for various irregular turbocodes (*see* Frey99, Figure 4). *See also* Frey Slides at 9, 11, 12 (showing BER- E_b/N_0 curves). As explained above, Luby and MacKay also teach outputting codewords that include parity bits (*see, e.g.*, Luby at 1:46-60, MacKay at Fig. 5).

b) Claim 14 is Rendered Obvious by a combination of Ping and MacKay

416. Claim 14 is rendered obvious by a combination of Ping and MacKay. As I explain above, claim 13 of the '781 patent is rendered obvious by a combination of Ping and MacKay. Claim 14 adds to claim 13 "outputting the codeword, wherein

1 the codeword comprises parity bits.” Luby and MacKay also both teach outputting
2 a codeword that comprises parity bits (*see, e.g.*, Luby at 1:46-60, MacKay at Fig.
3 5).

4 417. Ping teaches “outputting” the codeword. Like Divsalar and Frey99, Ping
5 describes the performance of the codes it discloses using plots of the BER of
6 various codes against the normalized signal-to-noise ratio E_b/N_0 :

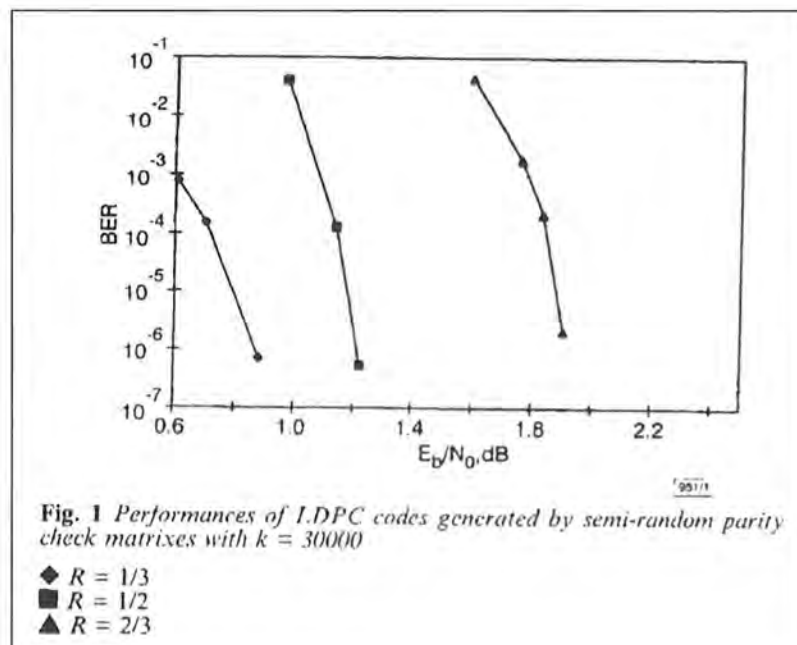


Fig. 1 Performances of LDPC codes generated by semi-random parity check matrixes with $k = 30000$

◆ $R = 1/3$
■ $R = 1/2$
▲ $R = 2/3$

Ping, Figure 1

17 As I explain above, the concepts of “BER” and E_b/N_0 only make sense in the
18 context of generating codewords, transmitting them over a noisy channel, and
19 decoding them at the other end.

20 418. Further, as I explain above, Ping teaches a coding scheme in which the
21 codeword includes both information and parity bits.⁵⁸ Specifically, Ping teaches
22 that “the codeword \mathbf{c} as $\mathbf{c} = [\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{d}]$, where \mathbf{p} and \mathbf{d} contain the parity and
23 information bits, respectively” (Ping at 38).

24 ⁵⁸ Such codes are called *systematic codes*.

1 419. Therefore, claim 14 is rendered obvious by a combination of Ping and
2 MacKay.

3 **C. Claim 15 of the '781 Patent is Invalid**

4 420. Claim 15 of the '781 patent reads:

5 15. The method of claim 14, wherein outputting the codeword
6 comprises: outputting the parity bits; and outputting at least some
7 of the information bits.

8 421. Claim 15 is rendered obvious by Divsalar alone or in combination with Ping,
9 Frey99, MacKay or the '999 patent, and is also obvious over Divsalar in view of
10 Luby, alone or in further in view of either Ping, Frey99, MacKay or the '999 patent
11 (i.e., (Divsalar + Luby alone or (Divsalar + Luby + (Ping, Frey99, MacKay or
12 the '999 patent))). As I explain above, claim 14 of the '781 patent is anticipated by
13 Divsalar, and obvious over Divsalar in view of any one of Frey99, Luby, or
14 MacKay. Claim 15 adds to claim 14 “wherein outputting the codeword comprises:
15 outputting the parity bits; and outputting at least some of the information bits.”
16 That is, a systematic code would teach the limitations added by claim 15 and as
17 explained above, systematic codes were known long before Caltech’s alleged
18 invention. Frey99 and MacKay teach systematic codes (*see* Frey99 at 3; MacKay
19 at Fig. 5, showing “[b]its $t_1 \dots t_k$ defined to be source bits”) and it would have
20 been obvious to make the codes of Divsalar or Luby systematic. Also, the
21 additional limitation of claim 15 is taught explicitly by each of Ping and the '999
22 patent.

23 422. As explained above, Ping teaches a systematic code wherein “outputting the
24 codeword comprises: outputting the parity bits; and outputting at least some of the
information bits.”

423. Also, as I explain above in the context of the '032 patent, one of
ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to combine the

1 teachings of Divsalar, Frey99, Luby or MacKay, and Ping. Therefore,
2 claim 15 is rendered obvious by Divsalar in combination with Ping, and
3 is also rendered obvious by the following combinations:

- 4 • Divsalar alone (systematic codes being well known) or in combination with
Ping (Ping teaching the systematic code)
- 5 • Divsalar in combination with Frey99 or MacKay (Frey99 and MacKay each
6 teaching both irregularity and systematic codes)
- 7 • Divsalar in combination with Luby (Luby teaching irregularity and
systematic codes being well known)
- 8 • Divsalar in combination with Luby and Ping (Luby teaching irregularity and
Ping teaching systematic codes)

9 424. The '999 patent also teaches a systematic code in which "outputting the
10 codeword comprises: outputting the parity bits; and outputting at least some of the
11 information bits":

Suitable *codewords* for such schemes have been generated in a
variety of ways. For systematic encoding of cyclic codes, one such
method utilizes serial data input/output wherein each information
word is applied to an (n-k)-stage shift register with feedback
connections based on a generator polynomial. *After the
information bits are shifted into the register and simultaneously
into the communication channel, the n-k parity bits formed in the
register are shifted into the channel, thus forming the complete
codeword.*

('999 Patent at 1:25-34) (emphasis added).

17 As indicated by the passage above, the '999 patent teaches encoding schemes in
18 which a "complete codeword" includes both the "information bits" and "the n-k
19 parity bits."

20 425. Like Divsalar, Frey99, Luby, and MacKay, the '999 patent relates to
21 methods of improving the performance of linear error-correcting codes. It was
22 filed in 1984 and granted in 1986, well over a decade before the claimed priority
23 date of the patents-in-suit. By March 7, 2000, the alleged conception date of the
24 patents-in-suit, the technology described in the '999 patent would have been well

1 known in the field, and one of ordinary skill in the art at the time would have been
2 motivated to combine the teachings of Divsalar and Frey99, Luby, or MacKay with
3 those of the '999 patent. Therefore, claim 15 is rendered obvious by Divsalar in
4 combination with the '999 patent, and is also rendered obvious by a combination
5 of Divsalar, Frey99, Luby, or MacKay, and the '999 patent.

6 426. Summarizing, systematic codes were notoriously well known before
7 Caltech's alleged invention. Ping, Frey99, MacKay and the '999 patent are
8 examples of references that teach systematic codes. It would have been obvious to
9 make a code like the ones taught in Divsalar or Luby systematic in view of the
10 general knowledge of one of ordinary skill, *e.g.*, as exemplified by Ping, Frey99,
11 MacKay and the '999 patent.

12 427. Claim 15 of the '781 patent is also rendered obvious by a combination of
13 Ping and MacKay. As I explain above, Ping and MacKay teach every element of
14 claim 14, and Ping and MacKay also teach the additional limitation imposed by
15 claim 15. Therefore, claim 15 is obvious over a combination of Ping and MacKay.

16 **D. Claim 16 of the '781 Patent is Invalid**

17 428. Claim 16 of the '781 patent reads:

18 16. The method of claim 15, wherein the parity bits follow the
19 information bits in the codeword.

20 429. Claim 16 is obvious over Divsalar in view of either Ping, Frey99, MacKay
21 or the '999 patent, and is also obvious over Divsalar in view of Luby, alone or
22 further in view of either Ping, Frey99, MacKay or the '999 patent (*i.e.*, (Divsalar +
23 Luby alone or (Divsalar + Luby + (Ping, Frey99, MacKay or the '999 patent))).

24 430. As I explain above, claim 15 of the '781 patent is rendered obvious by
25 Divsalar alone or in combination with references that teach irregularity (Frey99,
26 MacKay or Luby), if claim 13 is found to require irregularity, and with references
27 that teach systematic codes (Frey99, MacKay, Ping and the '999 patent).

1 431. Claim 16 adds to claim 15 “wherein the parity bits follow the information
2 bits in the codeword.” That is, claim 16 adds to claim 15 that in the systematic
3 code the bits must appear in a particular order, with the parity bits following the
4 information bits. Whether the parity bits precede or follow the systematic bits, or
5 appear in some other order, is not significant and the limitation added by claim 16
6 is obvious in view of any teaching of a systematic code, and as stated above
7 systematic codes were notoriously well known before Caltech’s alleged
8 invention.⁵⁹

8 432. Further, the specification of the ’781 patent offers no guidance regarding
9 what it means for the parity bits to “follow” the information bits in the codeword,
10 and Caltech has argued specifically that a sequence of bits can be a “codeword”
11 even if that sequence is never transmitted (*see* Dkt. No. 67 at 17-19), so this claim
12 limitation cannot be interpreted to require that the parity bits be transmitted at a
13 later time than the information bits, or vice versa.

13 433. I conclude that “the parity bits follow the information bits in the codeword”
14 requires only that the parity bits and the information bits not be intermingled
15 within the codeword. A codeword therefore satisfies the requirements of claim 16
16 if the parity bits are located at one end of the codeword, with the information bits
17 located at the other.

18 434. This requirement taught by Ping. As explained above, Ping teaches that “the
19 codeword \mathbf{c} as $\mathbf{c} = [\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{d}]$, where \mathbf{p} and \mathbf{d} contain the parity and information bits,
20 respectively” (Ping at 38). This defines the codeword \mathbf{c} as a vector, with the parity
21 bits \mathbf{p} at one end, and the information bits \mathbf{d} at the other. Therefore, Ping teaches
22 the additional limitation imposed by claim 16.

23 ⁵⁹ The testimony of Dr. Dariush Divsalar (the author of the Divsalar reference) confirms my own
24 opinion that the order of systematic and parity bits within a codeword is not significant (*see*
Divsalar Dep. at 71:15-73:11).

1 435. Alternatively, to the extent that claim 16 requires that a codeword be
2 transmitted such that the information bits are transmitted *earlier in time* than the
3 parity bits, this limitation would have been obvious to a person of ordinary skill in
4 the art based on the teachings of Ping alone. Ping does not specify any temporal
5 relationship between the transmission of the parity bits **p** and the information bits **d**,
6 but the teachings of Ping encompass schemes in which the parity bits are
7 transmitted at a later time than the information bits.

8 436. The '999 patent also teaches this limitation, under either interpretation
9 considered above. That is, it teaches that the parity bits are at one end of the
10 codeword with the information bits at the other, and it also (and more specifically)
11 teaches methods in which the information bits in a codeword are transmitted
12 *earlier in time* than the parity bits:

13 Suitable codewords for such schemes have been generated in a
14 variety of ways. For systematic encoding of cyclic codes, one such
15 method utilizes serial data input/output wherein each information
16 word is applied to an (n-k)-stage shift register with feedback
17 connections based on a generator polynomial. *After the*
18 *information bits are shifted into the register and simultaneously*
19 *into the communication channel, the n-k parity bits formed in the*
20 *register are shifted into the channel, thus forming the complete*
21 *codeword.*

22 ('999 Patent at 1:25-34) (emphasis added).

23 As the above passage explains, the '999 patent teaches encoding schemes in which
24 the information bits are shifted onto the communication channel (*i.e.*, transmitted)
earlier in time than the associated "n-k parity bits," which are transmitted later.

437. One of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to combine the
teachings of Divsalar and/or Frey99, Luby, or MacKay with those of either Ping or
the '999 patent, for the reasons outlined above with reference to claim 15 of
the '781 patent. Therefore, Claim 16 is rendered obvious by Divsalar alone or in
combination with Ping or the '999 patent, and is also rendered obvious by a

1 combination of Divsalar, with Frey99, Luby, or MacKay, alone or in further
2 combination with either Ping or the '999 patent.

3 438. Claim 16 of the '781 patent is also rendered obvious by a combination of
4 Ping and MacKay. As I explain above, Ping and MacKay teach every element of
5 claim 15, and Ping and MacKay also teach the additional limitation imposed by
6 claim 16. Therefore, claim 16 is obvious over a combination of Ping and MacKay.

7 **E. Claim 19 of the '781 Patent is Invalid**

8 439. Claim 19 of the '781 patent reads:

9 19. A method of encoding a signal, comprising:

10 receiving a block of data in the signal to be encoded, the block of
11 data including information bits; and

12 performing an encoding operation using the information bits as an
13 input, the encoding operation including an accumulation of mod-2
14 or exclusive-OR sums of bits in subsets of the information bits, the
15 encoding operation generating at least a portion of a codeword,
16 wherein at least two of the information bits appear in three subsets
17 of the information bits.

18 i) Claim 19 of the '781 Patent is Anticipated by Divsalar

19 440. I explain below, one limitation at a time, why claim 19 is anticipated by
20 Divsalar.

21 a) "A method of encoding a signal, comprising ..."

22 441. Divsalar teaches the preamble, as I explain above with reference to claim 13
23 of the '781 patent.

24 b) "receiving a block of data in the signal to be encoded, the block
of data including information bits"

442. Divsalar teaches this limitation, as I explain above with reference to claim
13 of the '781 patent.

1 c) "performing an encoding operation using the information bits as
2 an input, the encoding operation including an accumulation of
3 mod-2 or exclusive-OR sums of bits in subsets of the information
4 bits, the encoding operation generating at least a portion of a
5 codeword"

443. Divsalar teaches this limitation, as I explain above with reference to claim 13 of the '781 patent.

6 d) "wherein at least two of the information bits appear in three
7 subsets of the information bits"

8 444. As explained above, the encoding operation of Divsalar includes an
9 accumulation of mod-2 sums of bits in subsets of information bits. One example
10 of such an accumulation, for $N = 5$ and $q = 3$, is given by the equations:

- 11 $y_1 = i_4$
- 12 $y_2 = i_4 + i_5$
- 13 $y_3 = i_4 + i_5 + i_1$
- 14 $y_4 = i_4 + i_5 + i_1 + i_3$
- 15 $y_5 = i_4 + i_5 + i_3$
- 16 $y_6 = i_4 + i_5 + i_3 + i_2$
- 17 $y_7 = i_5 + i_3 + i_2$
- 18 $y_8 = i_5 + i_3$
- 19 $y_9 = i_5 + i_3 + i_1$
- 20 $y_{10} = i_5 + i_1$
- 21 $y_{11} = i_5 + i_1 + i_2$
- 22 $y_{12} = i_1 + i_2$
- 23 $y_{13} = i_1 + i_2 + i_5$
- 24 $y_{14} = i_1 + i_2 + i_5 + i_3$
- 25 $y_{15} = i_1 + i_2 + i_5 + i_3 + i_4$

Here, each bit y of the codeword is the sum of a different subset of information bits (denoted using the letter i).

445. As these equations show, at least two of the information bits appear in at least three subsets of information bits. For example, the information bit i_4 appears

1 in seven of the equations above, and information bit i_1 appears in nine of the
2 equations.

3 446. I interpret this limitation to be met as long as two information bits appear in
4 three or more subsets, because information bits that appear in more than three
5 subsets necessarily “appear in three subsets.” For example, if an information bit
6 appears in seven subsets (like, *e.g.*, i_4) and another information bit appears in nine
7 subsets (like, *e.g.*, i_1) then both information bits appear in “three subsets” of
8 information bits and this limitation is met.

9 447. While the equations above result from an example in which $N = 5$ and $q = 3$,
10 other values of N and q will necessarily produce codes in which at least two of the
11 information bits appear in three subsets of the information bits. For example an
12 RA code with $N = 1024$, $q = 3$, which Divsalar specifically discloses, will produce
13 a code in which at least two of the information bits appear in three subsets of the
14 information bits (*see* Divsalar, Figure 5).

15 448. Also, while the equations above result from using an interleaver that
16 scrambles bits according to one particular permutation, at least two information
17 bits will necessarily appear in three subsets of the information bits no matter how
18 the bits are permuted by the interleaver. Thus, Divsalar teaches that “at least two
19 of the information bits appear in three subsets of the information bits,” as required
20 by claim 19. At a minimum, Divsalar renders claim 19 obvious because it would
21 have been easy for one of ordinary skill to construct RA codes according to
22 Divsalar in which “at least two of the information bits appear in three subsets of
23 the information bits” as shown by the example above.

24 449. This limitation also holds for the “punctured” version of Divsalar discussed
above. For example, it holds for the example given above, where the parity bits
are represented by the equations:

1 $y_1 = i_4$
2 $y_7 = y_1 + (i_4 + i_5 + i_3 + i_2)$
3 $y_9 = y_7 + (i_2 + i_1)$
4 $y_{15} = y_9 + (i_4 + i_2)$

4 450. Here, the information bits appear in a variable number of subsets. The
5 information bit i_4 , for example, appears in three subsets, while the information bit
6 i_5 appears in only one.

7 451.

8 e) Summary

9 452. As explained above, Divsalar teaches every limitation of, and therefore
10 anticipates, claim 19.

11 ii) Claim 19 of the '781 Patent is Anticipated by Ping

12 453. I explain below, one limitation at a time, why claim 19 is anticipated by Ping.

13 a) "A method of encoding a signal, comprising ..."

14 454. Ping teaches this limitation, as I explain above with reference to claim 13 of
15 the '781 patent.

16 b) "receiving a block of data in the signal to be encoded, the block
of data including information bits"

17 455. Ping teaches this limitation, as I explain above with reference to claim 13 of
18 the '781 patent.

19 c) "performing an encoding operation using the information bits
20 as an input, the encoding operation including an accumulation of
21 mod-2 or exclusive-OR sums of bits in subsets of the information
bits, the encoding operation generating at least a portion of a
22 codeword"

23 456. Ping teaches this limitation, as I explain above with reference to claim 13 of
24 the '781 patent.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

d) “wherein at least two of the information bits appear in three subsets of the information bits”

457. Ping teaches this limitation. As I explain above, there are $kt/(n-k)$ 1s in each row of the parity check matrix, and t 1s in each column (see Ping at 38). Because there are t ones in every column, each subset of information bits that is summed prior to accumulation contains exactly t bits.

458. Ping specifically teaches coding schemes “using $t=4$,” in which each information bit appears in four distinct subsets of the information bits (Ping at 39). As I explain above, if two information bits appear in four subsets of the information bits, both information bits necessarily appear in three subsets of the information bits, and therefore Ping meets this limitation.

e) Summary

459. As explained above, Ping teaches every limitation of claim 19 and therefore anticipates claim 19.

IX. THE ASSERTED CLAIMS OF THE '833 PATENT ARE INVALID

460. As I explain below, asserted claims 1, 2, 4, and 8 of the '833 patent are invalid. A summary of the arguments set forth in this section is given in the table below:

'833 Claim	Divsalar + (Frey99 (or Frey slides), Luby or MacKay)	Ping + MacKay	Divsalar + (Frey99 (or Frey slides), Luby or MacKay) + '999 Patent	Ping + MacKay + '999 Patent
1	Obvious	Obvious	Obvious	Obvious
2	Obvious	Obvious	Obvious	Obvious
4	Obvious	Obvious	Obvious	Obvious
8	Obvious	Obvious	Obvious	Obvious

A. Claim 1 of the '833 Patent is Invalid

461. Claim 1 of the '833 patent reads:

1 1. An apparatus for performing encoding operations, the apparatus
comprising:

2 a first set of memory locations to store information bits;

3 a second set of memory locations to store parity bits;

4 a permutation module to read a bit from the first set of memory
locations and combine the read bit to a bit in the second set of
5 memory locations based on a corresponding index of the first set of
memory locations and a corresponding index of the second set of
6 memory locations; and

7 an accumulator to perform accumulation operations on the bits
stored in the second set of memory locations,

8 wherein two or more memory locations of the first set of memory
locations are read by the permutation module different times from
one another.

9 i) Claim 1 of the '833 Patent is obvious over Divsalar in view of
10 Frey99, Luby or MacKay

11 462. I explain below, one limitation at a time, why claim 1 is obvious over
12 Divsalar in view of any one of Frey99, Luby or MacKay (*i.e.*, Divsalar + (Frey99,
13 Luby or MacKay)).

14 a) "an apparatus for performing encoding operations"

15 463. Divsalar teaches the preamble. As I explain above, Divsalar describes a
16 "turbo-like" code called a repeat-accumulate code. A "coder" capable of encoding
17 information bits using a repeat-accumulate code is shown in Figure 3 of Divsalar,
reproduced above.

18 b) "a first set of memory locations to store information bits"

19 464. Divsalar teaches this limitation. A person of ordinary skill in the art would
20 recognize that the input block comprising information bits would be stored in a set
21 of memory locations (*i.e.*, the block of N bits input to the repeater as shown in
22 Figure 3 would have been stored in memory locations).

23 465. It would have been understood by one of ordinary skill in the art that the
24 encoder of Divsalar may be implemented on a general-purpose computer, where

1 the information bits would be stored in a buffer comprising a set of memory
2 locations. Indeed, one of ordinary skill in the art would have understood that
3 Divsalar *himself* implemented an RA encoder using a computer program. Divsalar
4 states “[w]e wrote a *computer program* to implement this “turbo-like” decoding
5 for RA codes with $q = 3$ (rate 1/3) and $q = 4$ (rate 1/4), and the results are shown in
6 Figure 5” (Divsalar at 9) (emphasis added). Divsalar ran this decoding program,
7 using sample encoded data as input, and measured the resulting coding
8 performance, which is plotted in Figure 5. One of ordinary skill in the art would
9 have understood Divsalar to have implemented an *encoder* program, in order to
generate the sample encoded data provided to the decoder.

10 466. Even if the RA codes of Divsalar were implemented using special-purpose
11 hardware components, an obvious implementation would have been to store the
12 information bits in a first set of memory locations within a memory buffer.

13 467. Divsalar itself is silent regarding the first set of memory locations, but so is
14 the specification of the '833 patent. If one of ordinary skill would have understood
15 the claimed first set of memory locations and their use from the '833 specification,
16 then they would have understood it from Divsalar too.⁶⁰

17 c) “a second set of memory locations to store parity bits”

18 468. Divsalar teaches this limitation. A person of ordinary skill in the art would
19 recognize that the “output block $[y_1, \dots, y_n]$ ” comprising parity bits would be
20 stored in a set of memory locations. See Divisalar at 5.

21 469. It would have been understood by one of ordinary skill in the art that the
22 encoder of Divsalar may be implemented on a general-purpose computer, where
23 the parity bits would be stored in a buffer comprising a set of memory locations.

24 ⁶⁰ See Wicker Tr. at 109-11.

1 As explained above, Divsalar himself implemented an encoder program, in order to
2 generate the sample encoded data provided to the decoder.

3 470. Even if the RA codes of Divsalar were implemented using special-purpose
4 hardware components, an obvious implementation would have been to store the
5 parity bits in a second set of memory locations within a memory buffer.

6 471. Divsalar itself is silent regarding the second set of memory locations, but so
7 is the specification of the '833 patent. If one of ordinary skill would have
8 understood the claimed second set of memory locations and their use from the '833
9 specification, then they would have understood it from Divsalar too.

10 d) "a permutation module to read a bit from the first set of memory
11 locations and combine the read bit to a bit in the second set of
12 memory locations based on a corresponding index of the first set
13 of memory locations and a corresponding index of the second set
14 of memory locations"

15 472. As explained above, the RA encoder shown in Fig. 3 of Divsalar comprises
16 three stages: repeat, interleave, and accumulate. In an implementation of the repeat
17 and interleave stages that would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the
18 art, the repeat stage of the encoder reads each of the N information bits stored in
19 the first set of memory locations q times, and sequentially writes the resulting
20 duplicated bits to a set of $N \times q$ memory locations (*i.e.*, the "second set of memory
21 locations). Interleaving is accomplished by writing the bits into the second set of
22 memory locations in one order and then reading them out of the second set of
23 memory locations in a different order (*e.g.*, writing the bits into the second set of
24 memory locations in a pseudo-random order and then reading the bits out in
sequential order).

1 473. The act of writing a bit to one of the second set of memory locations
2 constitutes “combining” the scrambled bit with the destination value.⁶¹ One of
3 ordinary skill in the art would have recognized that memory buffers are generally
4 initialized at the start of the encoding process, setting the contents of every
5 memory location in the buffer to zero. When the permutation module writes a bit *b*
6 into one of the second set memory locations after it has been initialized, it has the
7 effect of “combining” *b* with the value already stored in the memory location (*i.e.*,
8 a 0) using an XOR operation.⁶²

8 474. Collectively, the repeat and interleaving stages of the encoder in this
9 implementation constitute the claimed “permutation module.”⁶³ The repeat stage
10 reads each information bit multiple times from the first set of memory locations,
11 and the interleaving stage changes the order of the repeated bits by writing them
12 into the second set of memory locations in one order and reading them out in a
13 different order.⁶⁴

13 475. Divsalar is silent regarding how to perform the interleaving using the first
14 and second sets of memory locations, but so is the specification of the '833 patent.
15 If one of ordinary skill would have understood, from the '833 specification, how to
16

17
18 ⁶¹ Here I interpret the word “combine” according to the Court’s construction of that term, which
19 is to “perform logical operations on” (Claim Construction Order dated August 6, 2014, p. 18).
20 An XOR operation is a “logical operation” that falls within the scope of this construction (*see*,
21 *e.g.*, '833 patent at claim 2, which reads “[t]he apparatus of claim 1, wherein the permutation
22 module is configured to perform the combine operation to include performing mod-2 or
23 exclusive-OR sum”).

21 ⁶² Use of such combinatorial logic feeding the input to memories is a common and obvious
22 technique.

22 ⁶³ Here I interpret the term “permutation module” to mean “a module that changes the order of
23 data elements,” as both parties have agreed in their Joint Claim Construction Statement.

23 ⁶⁴ Strictly speaking, reading each bit multiple times from the first set of memory locations is not
24 required. That is, a repeat can be accomplished by reading a bit once and writing it multiple
times to different memory locations. However, it would not be inventive to read the bit multiple
times, *i.e.*, once for every time the bit is repeated.

1 perform the claimed interleaving using the memory locations, then they would
2 have understood it from Divsalar too.

3 e) "an accumulator to perform accumulation operations on the bits
4 stored in the second set of memory locations"

5 476. Divsalar teaches this limitation. As I explain above, the final stage of the
6 encoder shown in Fig. 3 of Divsalar is an accumulator, which performs
7 accumulation operations on the interleaved, repeated information bits (Divsalar at 5).
8 In a software implementation of the RA encoder (such as the "computer program"
9 that Divsalar himself used to measure the performance of RA codes) one of
10 ordinary skill in the art would have recognized that an obvious way to implement
11 the accumulation stage of the encoder would be to accumulate the scrambled bits
12 *in place*. That is, the "output block $[y_1, \dots, y_n]$ " would overwrite the "input block
13 $[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ " (Divsalar at 5). Because in-place accumulation uses the same set of
14 memory locations for both its input and output, it has the benefit of not requiring
15 any additional memory.

16 477. The two tables below illustrate how the accumulation is performed *in place*
17 in the second set of memory locations. Initially, the bit x_1 is stored in the first
18 location, x_2 is stored in the second location, and so on. For the accumulation
19 operation, the contents of the first location need not change. But, the second
20 location is replaced with the sum of the current value of the second location and
21 the prior location, *i.e.*, $x_1 + x_2$. That operation effectively removed the value x_2 as a
22 standalone quantity from the memory. But, that quantity is not needed for any of
23 the future operations. Rather than x_2 , the sum $x_1 + x_2$ is what is needed for the next
24 operation, and that is exactly what is now stored in the second location. The next
step is to add that quantity, $x_1 + x_2$, to the current value at the third location and that
sum, $x_1 + x_2 + x_3$, is then stored at the third location. That process then continues

1 for the remainder of the bits. Because each value that is overwritten is no longer
2 needed for future computations, the accumulation can be performed in place.

3

Index	1	2	3	4	...
Stored Value	x_1	x_2	x_3	x_4	...

4 **2nd set of memory locations before accumulation**

5

Index	1	2	3	4	...
Stored Value	x_1	x_1+x_2	$x_1+x_2+x_3$	$x_1+x_2+x_3+x_4$...

6 **2nd set of memory locations after accumulation**

7

8 478. At the end of the accumulation process, the “output block $[y_1, \dots, y_n]$ ” (i.e.,
9 the parity bits) would be stored in the second set of memory locations (see Divsalar
10 at 5).

11 479. Divsalar is silent as to how the accumulation would be performed within the
12 second set of memory locations, but so is the specification of the '833 patent. If
13 one of ordinary skill would have understood how to perform the claimed
14 accumulation within the second set of memory locations from the '833
15 specification, then they would have understood it from Divsalar too.

16 *f) “wherein two or more memory locations of the first set of*
17 *memory locations are read by the permutation module different*
18 *times from one another”*

19 480. The repeat stage of Divsalar is regular, and so the permutation module reads
20 every memory location in the first set of memory locations the same number of
21 times. However, Frey99 teaches irregular repetition, and Luby and MacKay both
22 teach the benefits of irregular coding, as explained above. Incorporating the
23 irregular repetition of Frey99, or the irregularity of Luby or MacKay, into the
24 implementation of the Divsalar encoder described above would result in an

1 irregular repeater which reads some of the first set of N memory locations more
2 times than it reads others, as required by this limitation.⁶⁵

3 481. Divsalar does not explicitly explain that the repeat is accomplished by
4 reading the same bit out of memory more than once. However, neither does the
5 specification of the '833 patent. If one of ordinary skill would have understood,
6 from the '833 specification, how to perform repeating by reading bits more than
7 once from memory, then they would have understood it from Divsalar too.

8 g) Summary

9 482. As explained above, the combination of Divsalar and Frey99, Luby or
10 MacKay teaches every limitation of claim 1 of the '833 patent.

11 h) Motivations to combine the irregular repeater of Frey99, or the
12 irregularity of Luby or MacKay, with the RA codes of Divsalar

13 483. As I explain above, one of ordinary skill in the art would have been
14 motivated to combine Divsalar and Frey99, Luby or MacKay in general, and
15 would specifically have been motivated to use the irregular repetition of Frey99, or
16 the irregularity of Luby or MacKay, with the RA codes of Divsalar. Briefly,
17 Frey99, Luby and MacKay all taught the benefits of irregular coding and one of
18 ordinary skill would have understood that Divsalar's RA could would have
19 benefited from making it irregular. I also explain above why such a combination
20 would require only a minor modification to the teachings of Divsalar, and would
21 not fundamentally change its principle of operation.

22 ii) Claim 1 of the '833 Patent is obvious over Ping in view of MacKay

23 484. I explain below, one limitation at a time, why claim 1 is obvious over Ping
24 in view of MacKay.

⁶⁵ Here I interpret "different times from one another" to mean "a different number of times from one another," as both parties have agreed in their Joint Claim Construction Statement.

1 a) “an apparatus for performing encoding operations”

2 485. Ping teaches the preamble. As I explain above, Ping teaches constructing
3 LDPC codes that can be encoded in two stages. In the first encoding stage, a
4 generator matrix is applied to a sequence of k information bits to produce sums of
5 information bits. In the second stage, the sums of information bits are accumulated
6 recursively to generate $n-k$ parity bits (see Ping at 38). One of ordinary skill in the
7 art would have understood that the encoding process taught by Ping would be
8 implemented by “an apparatus for performing encoding operations.”

9 b) “a first set of memory locations to store information bits”

10 486. Ping teaches this limitation. A person of ordinary skill in the art would
11 recognize that an implementation of Ping would store information bits in a set of
12 memory locations. Specifically, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary
13 skill in the art to implement the encoding processes disclosed by Ping using
14 hardware (e.g., a general-purpose computer or special-purpose electronic
15 components) that comprises a first set of memory locations for storing information
16 bits.

17 487. Like Divsalar, Ping is silent regarding the first set of memory locations, but
18 so is the specification of the '833 patent. If one of ordinary skill would have
19 understood the claimed first set of memory locations and their use from the '833
20 specification, then they would have understood it from Ping too.

21 c) “a second set of memory locations to store parity bits”

22 488. Ping teaches this limitation. A person of ordinary skill in the art would
23 recognize that an implementation of Ping would store parity bits in a set of
24 memory locations. Specifically, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary
skill in the art to implement the encoding processes disclosed by Ping using
hardware (e.g., a general-purpose computer or special-purpose electronic

1 components) that comprises a second set of memory locations for storing parity
2 bits.

3 489. Like Divsalar, Ping is silent regarding the second set of memory locations,
4 but so is the specification of the '833 patent. If one of ordinary skill would have
5 understood the claimed second set of memory locations and their use from the '833
6 specification, then they would have understood it from Ping too.

7 d) "a permutation module to read a bit from the first set of memory
8 locations and combine the read bit to a bit in the second set of
9 memory locations based on a corresponding index of the first set
of memory locations and a corresponding index of the second set
of memory locations"

10 490. Ping teaches this limitation under Caltech's apparent interpretation of
11 "permutation module." As explained above, Ping teaches constructing LDPC
12 codes that can be encoded in two stages. In the first encoding stage, sums of
13 subsets of the information bits are computed by reading each of the k information
14 bits from the first set of memory locations and, and combining, using an XOR
15 operation, the read bit with the bit stored in one of a second set of $n-k$ memory
16 locations. Eventually, each of the second set of memory locations will contain the
17 sum of a subset of the information bits, which Ping denotes:

$$\sum_j h_{ij}^d d_j$$

18
19
20 (Ping at 38).

21 491. The first encoding stage of Ping does not "change the order of data elements,"
22 as required by the Court's construction of "permutation module." Rather, in Ping,
23 the second set of memory locations stores sums of bits rather than reordered
24 versions of the bits themselves. Plaintiff's infringement arguments, however, still

1 appear to be based on an interpretation of “permutation module” that does not
2 require changing the order of bits themselves. Under Caltech’s interpretation, the
3 first encoding stage of Ping would constitute a “permutation module,” as required
4 by this limitation.⁶⁶

5 492. Like Divsalar, Ping is silent regarding how to perform the interleaving using
6 the first and second sets of memory locations. But so is the specification of
7 the ’833 patent. If one of ordinary skill would have understood, from the ’833
8 specification, how to perform the claimed interleaving using the memory locations,
9 then they would have understood it from Ping too.

10 e) “an accumulator to perform accumulation operations on the bits
11 stored in the second set of memory locations”

12 493. Ping teaches this limitation. As I explain above, the final stage of the
13 encoding process disclosed in Ping is an accumulation, in which the parity bits $\mathbf{p} =$
14 $\{p_i\}$ are computed by accumulating the sums calculated during the first stage,
15 defined recursively as follows:

$$16 \quad p_1 = \sum_j h_{1j}^d d_j$$
$$17 \quad p_i = p_{i-1} + \sum_j h_{ij}^d d_j$$

18
19
20 (Ping at 38)

21 494. In a software implementation of the encoding processes taught by Ping, one
22 of ordinary skill in the art would have recognized that an obvious way to
23 implement the accumulation stage would be to accumulate the scrambled bits *in*

24 ⁶⁶ That is, in the LDPC codes of DVB-S2, the parity bits are all sums of two or more information bits. But there is no need to reorder the information bits to construct such parity bits.

1 *place*, as was explained above with respect to Divsalar. Because in-place
2 accumulation uses the same set of memory locations for both its input and output,
3 it has the benefit of not requiring any additional memory.

4 495. At the end of the accumulation process, the parity bits $\mathbf{p} = \{p_i\}$ would be
5 stored in the second set of $n-k$ memory locations.

6 496. Like Divsalar, Ping is silent as to how the accumulation would be performed
7 within the second set of memory locations, but so is the specification of the '833
8 patent. If one of ordinary skill would have understood how to perform the claimed
9 accumulation within the second set of memory locations from the '833
10 specification, then they would have understood it from Ping too.

11 *f) "wherein two or more memory locations of the first set of*
12 *memory locations are read by the permutation module different*
13 *times from one another"*

14 497. In the LDPC codes disclosed by Ping, the parity-check matrix \mathbf{H} has a
15 column weight of t , so the permutation module would read each information bit t
16 times, combining the information bit into t different locations in the second set of
17 memory locations (*see* Ping at 38).

18 498. However, as explained above, MacKay teaches parity check matrices with
19 nonuniform column weights. Implementing the LDPC-accumulate coders
20 disclosed by Ping using the irregular parity check matrices disclosed by MacKay
21 would result in a permutation module that reads some of the first set of memory
22 locations more times than it reads others, as required by this limitation.⁶⁷

23 499. Like Divsalar, Ping and MacKay do not explicitly explain reading the same
24 bit out of memory more than once. However, neither does the specification of

⁶⁷ As noted above with respect to Divsalar, strictly speaking the bits need not be read multiple times to repeat them, i.e., each bit could be read once and then written multiple times. However, implementing the repeat by reading each bit multiple times would have been obvious.

1 the '833 patent. If one of ordinary skill would have understood, from the '833
2 specification, reading bits more than once from memory, then they would have
3 understood it from both Ping and MacKay too.

4 g) Summary

5 500. As explained above, the combination of Ping and MacKay teaches every
6 limitation of claim 1 of the '833 patent.

7 h) Motivations to combine the irregularity of MacKay with the
8 LDPC-accumulate coders of Ping

9 501. As I explain above, one of ordinary skill in the art would have been
10 motivated to combine Ping and MacKay in general, and would specifically have
11 been motivated to combine the LDPC-accumulate coders disclosed by Ping with
12 the irregular parity check matrices disclosed by MacKay. I also explain why such
13 a combination would require only a minor modification to the teachings of Ping,
14 and would not fundamentally change its principle of operation.

15 502. For at least the reasons given above, claim 1 of the '833 patent is obvious
16 over the combination of Ping and MacKay.

17 iii) Claim 1 of the '833 Patent is obvious over Divsalar in view of one of
18 Frey99, Luby or MacKay and further in view of the '999 Patent

19 503. As explained above, Divsalar and Frey99, Luby or MacKay together teach
20 every limitation of, and render obvious, claim 1 of the '833 patent. However, in
21 the event Divsalar and Frey99, Luby or MacKay are found not to teach the
22 "memory locations" recited in claim 1, then claim 1 is obvious over the
23 combination of Divsalar, Frey99, Luby or MacKay and the '999 patent (*i.e.*,
24 Divsalar + (Frey99, Luby or MacKay) + '999 patent).

504. At a high level, use of memories for implementing codes was notoriously
well known in the art long before Caltech's alleged invention. One of ordinary

1 skill reading Divsalar, Frey99, Luby or MacKay would have understood that their
2 codes are implemented using memories as described above. The '999 patent is
3 merely an example of a reference showing generally how use of memories was
4 known.

5 505. As I explain above, the '999 patent teaches an encoder for encoding
6 information bits using a linear error-correcting code. The encoder taught by
7 the '999 patent uses a plurality of memories that store values used during the
8 encoding process ('999 patent at Abstract). While the memories taught by the '999
9 patent are read-only memories, one of ordinary skill in the art would have
10 recognized that writable memories may also be used to implement the encoding
11 process (*see* '999 patent at Abstract). I also explain above why one of ordinary
12 skill in the art would have been motivated to combine Divsalar, Frey99, Luby or
13 MacKay and the '999 patent.

14 506. Therefore, for at least the reasons given above, claim 1 is obvious over the
15 combination of Divsalar, Frey99, Luby, or MacKay and the '999 patent.

16 iv) Claim 1 of the '833 Patent is obvious over Ping in view of MacKay
17 and the '999 Patent

18 507. As explained above, Ping and MacKay together teach every limitation of,
19 and render obvious, claim 1 of the '833 patent (under Caltech's apparent
20 interpretation of "permutation module"). However, in the event Ping and MacKay
21 are found not to teach the "memory locations" recited in claim 1, then claim 1 is
22 obvious over the combination of Ping, MacKay, and the '999 patent.

23 508. As noted above, at a high level, use of memories for implementing codes
24 was notoriously well known in the art long before Caltech's alleged invention.
One of ordinary skill reading Ping or MacKay would have understood that their
codes are implemented using memories as described above. The '999 patent is

1 merely an example of a reference showing generally how use of memories was
2 known.

3 509. As I explain above, the '999 patent teaches an encoder for encoding
4 information bits using a linear error-correcting code using memories that store
5 values used during the encoding process ('999 patent at Abstract).

6 510. Further, one of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to
7 combine Ping and MacKay with the '999 patent. Like Ping and MacKay, the '999
8 patent relates to methods of improving the performance of linear error-correcting
9 codes. It was filed in 1984 and granted in 1986, well over a decade before the
10 claimed priority date of the patents-in-suit. By March 7, 2000, the alleged
11 conception date of the patents-in-suit, the technology described in the '999 patent
12 would have been well known in the field, and one of ordinary skill in the art at the
13 time would have been motivated to combine the teachings of Ping and MacKay
14 with those of the '999 patent.

15 511. Therefore, for at least the reasons given above, claim 1 is obvious over the
16 combination of Ping, MacKay, and the '999 patent.

17 **B. Claim 2 of the '833 Patent is Invalid**

18 512. Claim 2 of the '833 patent reads:

19 2. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the permutation module is
20 configured to perform the combine operation to include performing
21 mod-2 or exclusive-OR sum.

22 513. Claim 2 is rendered obvious by a combination of Divsalar and Frey99, Luby
23 or MacKay, and by a combination of Ping and MacKay. Claim 2 is also rendered
24 obvious by each of these combinations considered in view of the '999 patent.

514. As I explained above, claim 1 is rendered obvious by each of these
combinations. Claim 2 adds to claim 1 "wherein the permutation module is
configured to perform the combine operation to include performing mod-2 or

1 exclusive-OR sum.” This additional limitation of claim 2 is taught by each of
2 Divsalar and Ping, as explained above.

3 515. Therefore, claim 2 is rendered obvious by a combination of Divsalar and
4 Frey99, and by a combination of Ping and MacKay, and is also rendered obvious
5 by each of these combinations in view of the '999 patent.

6 **C. Claim 4 of the '833 Patent is Invalid**

7 516. Claim 4 of the '833 patent reads:

8 4. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the accumulator is configured
9 to perform the accumulation operation to include a mod-2 or
10 exclusive-OR sum of the bit stored in a prior index to a bit stored
11 in a current index based on a corresponding index of the second set
12 of memory locations.

13 517. Claim 4 is rendered obvious by a combination of Divsalar and Frey99, Luby
14 or MacKay, and by a combination of Ping and MacKay. Claim 4 is also rendered
15 obvious by each of these combinations, considered in view of the '999 patent.

16 518. As I explain above, claim 1 is rendered obvious by each of these
17 combinations. Claim 4 adds to claim 1 “wherein the accumulator is configured to
18 perform the accumulation operation to include a mod-2 or exclusive-OR sum of
19 the bit stored in a prior index to a bit stored in a current index based on a
20 corresponding index of the second set of memory locations.”

21 519. This additional limitation of claim 4 is taught by each of Divsalar and Ping.
22 For example, the accumulator of Divsalar calculates the parity bits y_1, \dots, y_n as
23 follows:

24 [W]e prefer to think of [the accumulator] as a block coder whose
input block $[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ and output block $[y_1, \dots, y_n]$ are related by
the formula

$$\begin{aligned}y_1 &= x_1 \\y_2 &= x_1 + x_2 \\y_3 &= x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \\y_n &= x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \dots + x_n\end{aligned}$$

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

(Divsalar at 5)

520. From the above passage, one can see that all of the parity bits y_i (except the first parity bit y_1) can be defined by the recursive formula $y_i = y_{i-1} + x_i$. Thus, calculating y_i involves taking the mod-2 sum of the bit stored in a prior index (*i.e.*, parity bit y_{i-1}) and a bit stored in a current index (*i.e.*, repeated information bit x_i).

521. Similarly, Ping defines each parity bit p_i (except the first parity bit p_1) recursively as follows:

$$p_i = p_{i-1} + \sum_j h_{ij}^d d_j$$

(Ping at 38)

522. Thus, calculating p_i involves taking the mod-2 sum of the bit stored in a prior index (*i.e.*, parity bit p_{i-1}) and a bit stored in a current index (*i.e.*, the sum of the i^{th} subset of information bits $\sum_j h_{ij}^d d_j$).

523. Therefore, claim 4 is rendered obvious by a combination of Divsalar and Frey99, and by a combination of Ping and MacKay, and is also rendered obvious by each of these combinations in view of the '999 patent.

D. Claim 8 of the '833 Patent is Invalid

524. Claim 8 of the '833 patent reads:

- 8. A method of performing encoding operations, the method comprising:
 - receiving a sequence of information bits from a first set of memory locations;
 - performing an encoding operation using the received sequence of information bits as an input, said encoding operation comprising:
 - reading a bit from the received sequence of information bits, and
 - combining the read bit to a bit in a second set of memory locations based on a corresponding index of the first set of memory locations

1 for the received sequence of information bits and a corresponding
2 index of the second set of memory locations; and

3 accumulating the bits in the second set of memory locations,
4 wherein two or more memory locations of the first set of memory
5 locations are read by the permutation module different times from
6 one another.

- 7 i) Claim 8 of the '833 Patent is obvious over Divsalar in view of
8 Frey99, Luby or MacKay

9 525. I explain below, one limitation at a time, why claim 8 is obvious over
10 Divsalar in view of Frey99, Luby or MacKay.

- 11 a) "a method of performing encoding operations"

12 526. Divsalar teaches the preamble, as I explain above with reference to claim 1
13 of the '833 patent.

- 14 b) "receiving a sequence of information bits from a first set of
15 memory locations"

16 527. Divsalar teaches this limitation, as I explain above with reference to claim 1
17 of the '833 patent.

- 18 c) "performing an encoding operation using the received sequence
19 of information bits as an input"

20 528. Divsalar teaches this limitation, as I explain above with reference to claim 1
21 of the '833 patent.

- 22 d) "said encoding operation comprising: reading a bit from the
23 received sequence of information bits, and combining the read
24 bit to a bit in a second set of memory locations based on a
corresponding index of the first set of memory locations for the
received sequence of information bits and a corresponding index
of the second set of memory locations"

529. Divsalar teaches this limitation, as I explain above with reference to claim 1
of the '833 patent.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

e) “accumulating the bits in the second set of memory locations, wherein two or more memory locations of the first set of memory locations are read by the permutation module different times from one another”

530. Frey99, Luby and MacKay each teach this limitation, as I explain above with reference to claim 1 of the '833 patent.

f) Summary

531. As explained above, the combination of Divsalar and Frey99, Luby or MacKay teaches every limitation of claim 8 of the '833 patent.

g) Motivations to combine the irregular repeater of Frey99, Luby or MacKay with the RA codes of Divsalar

532. As I explain above, one of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to combine Divsalar and Frey99, Luby or MacKay in general, and would specifically have been motivated to use the irregular repetition of Frey99, or the irregularity of Luby or MacKay, with the RA codes of Divsalar. I also explain why such a combination would require only a minor modification to the teachings of Divsalar, and would not fundamentally change its principle of operation.

533. For at least the reasons given above, claim 8 of the '833 patent is obvious over Divsalar in view of Frey99, Luby or MacKay.

ii) Claim 8 of the '833 Patent is obvious over Ping in view of MacKay

534. I explain below, one limitation at a time, why claim 8 is obvious over Ping in view of MacKay.

a) “a method of performing encoding operations”

535. Ping teaches the preamble, as I explain above with reference to claim 1 of the '833 patent.

1 b) "receiving a sequence of information bits from a first set of
2 memory locations"

3 536. Ping teaches this limitation, as I explain above with reference to claim 1 of
4 the '833 patent.

5 c) "performing an encoding operation using the received sequence
6 of information bits as an input"

7 537. Ping teaches this limitation, as I explain above with reference to claim 1 of
8 the '833 patent.

9 d) "said encoding operation comprising: reading a bit from the
10 received sequence of information bits, and combining the read
11 bit to a bit in a second set of memory locations based on a
12 corresponding index of the first set of memory locations for the
13 received sequence of information bits and a corresponding index
14 of the second set of memory locations"

15 538. Ping teaches this limitation, as I explain above with reference to claim 1 of
16 the '833 patent.

17 e) "accumulating the bits in the second set of memory locations,
18 wherein two or more memory locations of the first set of memory
19 locations are read by the permutation module different times
20 from one another"

21 539. MacKay teaches this limitation, as I explain above with reference to claim 1
22 of the '833 patent.

23 f) Summary

24 540. As explained above, the combination of Ping and MacKay teaches every
limitation of claim 8 of the '833 patent.

 g) Motivations to combine the irregularity of MacKay with the
LDPC-accumulate coders of Ping

541. As I explain above, one of ordinary skill in the art would have been
motivated to combine Ping and MacKay in general, and would specifically have

1 been motivated to combine the LDPC-accumulate coders disclosed by Ping with
2 the irregular parity check matrices disclosed by MacKay. I also explain why such
3 a combination would require only a minor modification to the teachings of Ping,
4 and would not fundamentally change its principle of operation.

5 542. For at least the reasons given above, claim 8 of the '833 patent is obvious
6 over Ping in view of MacKay.

7 iii) Claim 8 of the '833 Patent is obvious over Divsalar in view of one of
8 Frey99, Luby or MacKay and further in view of the '999 Patent

9 543. As explained above, Divsalar and Frey99, Luby or MacKay together teach
10 every limitation of, and render obvious, claim 8 of the '833 patent. However, in
11 the event Divsalar and Frey, Luby or MacKay are found not to teach the “memory
12 locations” recited in claim 8, then claim 8 is obvious over the combination of
13 Divsalar, Frey99, Luby or MacKay and the '999 patent.

14 544. As I explain above, the '999 patent teaches an encoder for encoding
15 information bits using a linear error-correcting code. The encoder taught by
16 the '999 patent uses a plurality of memories that store values used during the
17 encoding process ('999 patent at Abstract).

18 545. Further, I also explain above why one of ordinary skill in the art would have
19 been motivated to combine Divsalar, Frey99, Luby or MacKay and the '999 patent.
20 Therefore, for at least the reasons given above, claim 8 is obvious over the
21 combination of Divsalar, Frey99, Luby or MacKay and the '999 patent.

22 iv) Claim 8 of the '833 Patent is obvious over Ping in view of MacKay
23 and the '999 Patent

24 546. As explained above, Ping and MacKay together teach every limitation of,
and render obvious, claim 8 of the '833 patent. However, in the event Ping and

1 MacKay are found not to teach the “memory locations” recited in claim 8, then
2 claim 1 is obvious over the combination of Ping, MacKay, and the ’999 patent.

3 547. As I explain above, the ’999 patent teaches an encoder for encoding
4 information bits using a linear error-correcting code using memories that store
5 values used during the encoding process (’999 patent at Abstract).

6 548. Further, as I explain above, one of ordinary skill in the art would have been
7 motivated to combine Ping and MacKay with the ’999 patent. Therefore, for at
8 least the reasons given above, claim 8 is obvious over the combination of Ping,
9 MacKay, and the ’999 patent.

10 **E. Claims 1, 2, 4, and 8 are Invalid for Lack of Written Description.**

11 549. Independent claims 1 and 8 recite “memory locations.” Specifically, these
12 claims recite “a first set of memory locations” for storing information bits, and “a
13 second set of memory locations” for storing parity bits. They further require
14 reading an information bit from one of the first set of memory locations and
15 combining the read bit with a bit in the second set of memory locations based on a
16 “corresponding index of the first set of memory locations.” Dependent claims 2
17 and 4 inherit these limitations from independent claim 1, from which they depend.

18 550. However, the first reference to “memory locations,” sets of “memory
19 locations,” or indices pointing to “memory locations” in the prosecution histories
20 of the patents-in-suit appears in the claims of the ’833 patent, filed on March 28,
21 2011. For this reason, it is my opinion that the claims of the ’833 patent are invalid
22 because the disclosure lacks sufficient written description of the claimed invention.

23 551. In the alternative, in the event that one or more claims of the ’833 patent are
24 found not to be invalid under the written description requirement, the earliest
priority date to which those claims could be entitled is March 28, 2011, the date
those claims were first filed.

1 552. The claims of the '833 patent, and in particular their use of memory
2 locations and indexes may have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art in
3 view of the '833 specification. As noted above, use of memories for coding was
4 well known before Caltech's alleged invention. However, I understand that the
5 test for written description is not whether the invention would have been obvious
6 but whether the words or figures of the specification show the inventors were in
7 possession of the invention. The specification of the '833 patent does not
8 communicate to one of ordinary skill in the art that the inventors were in
9 possession of the alleged invention.

9 **F. All asserted claims are invalid over Hughes' products**

10 553. As noted above, I have been told that a number of the accused products in
11 this case were sold by Defendants prior to March 28, 2011. I have further been
12 informed that Caltech has not varied its infringement contentions for any of the
13 products, i.e., it has treated all accused products the same. I have not studied the
14 accused products. However, if Caltech succeeds in demonstrating infringement of
15 any claims of the '833 patent, then those claims would be invalid over the accused
16 products that were sold prior to March 28, 2011. That is, I have been informed of
17 the axiom of patent law, "that which infringes if later, anticipates if earlier." If
18 Caltech proves that its '833 claims cover the accused products, then those same
19 products that preceded the '833 claims would invalidate those claims.

19 **X. SECONDARY CONSIDERATIONS**

20 554. I have reviewed Caltech's Second Supplemental Responses to Defendants'
21 First Set of Interrogatories, which relate in part to secondary considerations of non-
22 obviousness (*see* Caltech's First and Second Supplemental Responses to
23 Interrogatory Number 5). It is my opinion that the supposed indicia of
24 nonobviousness identified by Caltech in these responses are not relevant to the

1 claims of the patents-in-suit, and fail to provide support for Caltech's position that
2 the asserted claims are not obvious.

3 555. Caltech contends that the claimed invention was not obvious because it
4 enjoyed commercial success, but to support this contention Caltech's responses
5 merely present evidence that "irregular repeat accumulate (IRA) codes" have been
6 commercially successful. While the patents-in-suit relate generally to IRA codes,
7 the asserted claims do not cover all possible implementations of IRA codes. A
8 product may use "IRA codes" without using the claimed invention. Therefore,
9 pointing to the supposed commercial success of products that use "IRA codes"
10 does not demonstrate that the claimed invention itself was not obvious. This
11 objection is not limited to Caltech's evidence of "commercial success," but also
12 applies to the other supposed indicia of non-obviousness that Caltech identifies.
13 Even if it were true (and it is not) that IRA codes have been "widely praised by the
14 industry," have "overcome skepticism from experts," or have achieved
15 "unexpected results," these facts would not demonstrate the non-obviousness of the
16 particular class of codes that is covered by the asserted claims. Also, as part of its
17 allegation of commercial success, Caltech has pointed to sales of the accused
18 products. However, I understand that the accused products have not been shown to
19 infringe and, without such a showing, sales of those products do not demonstrate
20 non-obviousness of the claims. Further, Caltech has not provided any evidence
21 that any commercial success of the accused products was based on the features of
22 those products.

23 556. Further, Caltech contends that the asserted claims are not obvious because
24 they have "overcome skepticism from experts," and that high-performance, low
complexity codes had "long eluded the telecommunications industry." However,
these contentions are incorrect. In fact, experts were not skeptical about the
feasibility of implementing codes characterized by both good error correcting

1 performance and computational efficiency. Rather, prior to Caltech's alleged
2 invention, it was well known that codes could be designed that have these
3 properties. For example, Ping states that "[t]he new method can achieve
4 essentially the same performance as the standard LDPC encoding method with
5 significantly reduced complexity" (Ping at 39). Similarly, MacKay describes a
6 class of "fast encoding" Gallager codes that allow for reduced encoding
7 complexity while demonstrating "equally good performance" (MacKay at 1449;
8 *see also* MacKay at 1452, "Decoding Times: Not only do these irregular codes
9 outperform the regular codes, they require fewer iterations ..."). Indeed, months
10 before the alleged conception date of the patents-in-suit, I myself had suggested
11 making repeat-accumulate codes irregular (*see* CALTECH000024021).

12 557. Caltech has also failed to demonstrate that the claimed codes achieved
13 unexpected results. Prior to Caltech's alleged invention, it was well understood
14 that making a code irregular would improve its performance (*see generally, e.g.,*
15 Luby, MacKay, Frey99, Frey Slides, Luby97, Luby98, Richardson). For example,
16 Frey99 demonstrates that irregular turbocodes outperform the corresponding
17 regular turbo codes, and the improvement in performance is consistent with what
18 was shown previously by Luby and MacKay. Based on these results, it was
19 expected that adding irregularity to RA codes would also improve performance,
20 which was later found to be the case. In conclusion, the supposed indicia of non-
21 obviousness identified by Caltech fail to show that the claimed invention was
22 obvious.

23 558. Also, I understand that simultaneous invention by others is evidence of
24 obviousness. As noted above, I myself suggested to Dariush Divsalar that he make
his RA codes irregular. *See* Email from Brendan Frey to Dariush Divsalar dated
Dec. 8, 1999 (CALTECH000024021). If turning RA codes into IRA codes was
inventive, I made that invention myself before Caltech claims to have done so.

1 Also, as noted above, David MacKay also produced IRA codes with his RA.c
2 software before Caltech claims to have developed its alleged invention. My work
3 and that of David MacKay shows simultaneous development by others, and further
4 evidences the obviousness of Caltech's claims.

5 **XI. THE MARCH 7 2000 MCELIECE EMAIL**

6 559. I have been informed that Caltech argues that an email dated March 7, 2000
7 sent by Robert McEliece, one of the inventors of the patents-in-suit, is evidence of
8 the conception of the inventions to which the asserted claims are directed.

9 560. In its entirety, the email reads as follows:

10 From: rjm (Robert J. McEliece)
11 Sent: Tue 3/07/2000 4:12 PM (GMT-08:00)
12 To: <aamod>, <hu>, <mas>
13 Cc:
14 Bcc:
15 Subject: A thought

16 Hi all,

17 It just occurred to me that our "generalized" RA codes are just
18 low-density GENERATOR matrix codes, followed by an accumulator.
19 For example, ordinary RA codes are $S(1,q)S$ LDGM codes + accumulator.

20 So what we want to consider is whether irregular LDGM outer codes
21 gain us anything.

22 (Incidentally, Tommy Cheng considered LDGM codes in his thesis.)

23 --Bob

24 CALTECH000008667

25 561. The emails suggests trying to incorporate irregularity into a class of known
26 codes, but does not indicate whether the resulting irregular code would result in
27 any improvement over the state of the art. The first paragraph describes a set of
28 "generalized" RA codes that are "just low-density generator matrix codes,
29 followed by an accumulator." These codes were known in the art, and described in,
30 e.g., the Divsalar reference, as I explain above.

31 562. The sole mention of irregularity in the email appears in the second paragraph,
32 which contains only the sentence "[s]o what we want to consider is whether

1 irregular LDGM outer codes gain us anything.” This sentence characterizes
2 incorporating irregularity into LDGM-accumulate codes as an idea for further
3 consideration, and not as a fully conceived invention.

4 563. CALTECH000008667 does not explain how to design or implement the
5 “irregular LDGM outer codes” that are referenced in the second paragraph. In
6 particular, irregular codes depend crucially on a feature known as a “degree profile”
7 (as described in claim 6 of the ’710 patent), but CALTECH000008667 nowhere
8 mentions which degree profile to use or how the degree profile should be selected.
9 In fact, CALTECH000008667 does not explicitly state that irregular *repetition*
10 should be used for the LDGM outer code, which is required by many of the
11 asserted claims of the patents-in-suit, as I explain above. Given the lack of a
12 concrete suggestion as to *how* to incorporate irregularity into LDGM codes, the
13 email above does not show that the inventors, at the time of the email, had made
14 the invention claimed in the patents.

15 564. In my opinion, CALTECH000008667 at most expresses McEliece’s *hope*
16 that adding irregularity to LDGM-accumulate codes would produce desirable
17 results (*see id.*, “so what we want to *consider* is *whether* irregular LDGM outer
18 codes gain us anything”) (emphasis added).

19 565. Finally, CALTECH000008667 only suggests adding irregularity to LDGM
20 codes, but the claimed invention purports to be applicable to a broader class of
21 codes than LDGM codes. For example, in the ’710 claims, only dependent claims
22 7, 13, and 20 recite a first-encoding step involving a “low-density generator matrix.”
23 This implies that independent claims 1, 11, and 15 (from which claims 7, 13, and
24 20 depend, respectively) are intended to cover a broader class of codes than
irregular LDGM-accumulate codes. Also, in the ’710 claims, only dependent
claims 4, 5 and 7 recite a second-encoding step involving an “accumulator.” This
implies that independent claims 1, 2 and 3 (from which claims 4, 5 and 7 depend)

1 are intended to cover a broader class of codes than irregular LDGM-accumulate
2 codes. However, the email reproduced above mentions irregularity only in the
3 context of LDGM-accumulate codes, and does not suggest incorporating
4 irregularity into a broader class of codes.

5 566. Further, the attached email is silent about limitations in the claims of the
6 asserted patents (e.g., “obtaining a block of data” of the ’710 claims; the equations
7 of claim 1 of the ’032 patent; the message passing decoder or Tanner graph of
8 claim 18 of the ’032 patent; or the memory locations or indices of the ’833 claims).

9 567. Further, none of the other documents identified by Caltech as evidence of
10 Conception predate the provisional applications to which the patents-in-suit claim
11 priority.

12 **XII. INVENTORSHIP**

13 568. Divsalar’s 1998 paper disclosed everything in ’781 claim 19. I have been
14 informed that Divsalar worked jointly in collaboration with the named
15 inventors. Divsalar should have been named an inventor on that patent. All of the
16 other asserted claims rely on the repeat-accumulate code disclosed by
17 Divsalar. Divsalar should also have been named an inventor on the other patents.

18 **XIII. MATERIALITY**

19 569. I have been asked for my opinion on whether the following three references
20 were material to the patentability of the claimed invention:

- 21 • Luby, M. et al., “Practical Loss-Resilient Codes,” *STOC '97* (1997)
22 (hereinafter, “Luby97”)
- 23 • Luby, M. et al., “Analysis of Low Density Codes and Improved Designs
24 Using Irregular Graphs,” *STOC '98*, p. 249-259 (1998) (hereinafter,
“Luby98”)

- 1 • Richardson, T. et al. “Design of provably good low-density parity check
2 codes,” *IEEE Transactions on Information Theory* (1999) (preprint)
3 (hereinafter, “Richardson99”)

4 570. For the reasons set forth in detail below, each of these references was
5 material to the patentability of the claims of the patents-in-suit. In particular, each
6 reference teaches irregularity, a concept that is central to the claimed invention but
7 which was not taught by any of the references that were before the Patent Office
8 during prosecution.

9 571. For each of these three references, I rely upon the entire disclosure of the
10 reference in forming my opinions with respect to materiality. Without limiting that
11 basis in any way, certain aspects of each reference demonstrating their materiality
12 are briefly discussed below. Additional aspects are set forth in the claim charts
13 attached as Exhibits F, G, and H.

14 **A. Luby97**

15 572. Luby97 is material to the patentability of all asserted claims of the patents-
16 in-suit because it teaches the concept of irregularity. (*See* Luby 97, *passim*; *see*
17 *also* Khandekar Thesis at CALTECH000003301). In particular, Luby 97 teaches
18 that making a regular code irregular will improve that code’s performance. For
19 example, Luby 97 teaches: “In contrast with many applications of random graphs
20 in computer science, our graphs are not regular. Indeed, the analysis in Section 6
21 shows that it is not possible to approach channel capacity with regular graphs.”
22 (Luby 97 at 153.) Indeed, Luby 97 teaches that because regular graphs “cannot
23 yield codes that are close to optimal,” “irregular graphs are a necessary component
24 of our design.” (*Id.* at 151-52.) Thus, Luby 97 concludes, “irregular degree
sequences are better than regular degree sequences.” (*Id.* at 158.) This concept
was not taught by any of the references that were before the Patent Office during
prosecution.

1 573. Luby 97 describes the performance gain from converting a regular code into
2 an irregular code. Luby 97 states, for example: “In this paper, we present codes
3 that can be encoded and decoded in linear time while providing near optimal loss
4 protection.” (*Id.* at 151.) Irregular codes, Luby 97 explains, “can transmit over
5 lossy channels at rates extremely close to capacity.” (*Id.* at 150.)

6 574. Luby 97 also teaches how to convert a regular code into an irregular code.
7 This “requires the careful choice of a random *irregular* bipartite graph, where the
8 structure of the *irregular* graph is extremely important” (Luby97 at Abstract)
(emphasis added). Luby 97 goes on to explain:

9 “Our encoding and decoding algorithms are almost symmetrical.
10 Both are extremely simple, computing exactly one exclusive-or
11 operation for each edge in a randomly chosen bipartite graph. As
12 in many similar applications, the graph is chosen to be sparse,
13 which immediately implies that the encoding and decoding
14 algorithms are fast. Unlike many similar applications, the graph is
15 not regular; instead it is quite irregular with a carefully chosen
16 degree sequence.”

17 575. (*Id.* at 151-52.) Note that the term “degree sequence” is equivalent to
18 the term “degree profile”, as referred to in the patents-in-suit, in Frey99 and
19 in MacKay. Luby 97 goes on to provide the “tools” for how “to *design* good
20 irregular degree sequences.” (*Id.* at 152 (emphasis in original); *see also id.*
21 at 153-59.)

22 576. Importantly, Luby 97 teaches that one way of encoding an irregular code is
23 by using an irregular low-density generator matrix (“LDGM”):

24 “The βn check bits of the code $C(B)$ described in Section 2 can be
computed by multiplying the vector of n message bits by the $\beta n \times n$
matrix, $M(B)$, whose (i, j) -th entry is 1 if there is an edge in B
between left node i and right node j and is 0 otherwise (the
multiplication is over the field of two elements). We choose our
graphs B to be sparse, so that the resulting matrix $M(B)$ is sparse
and the multiplication can be performed quickly.”

1 (*Id.* at 157; *see also id.* (teaching that “the average number of 1s per row in $M(B)$ is
2 $n \ln(1/\epsilon)$; so, the Gaussian elimination can be performed in time $O(n \ln(1/\epsilon))$ ”);
3 Divsalar Tr. (232:18-25, 238:20-241:8 (“what we’ve got here is a – in Luby ’97, an
4 irregular low-density generator matrix”).)

5 577. Irregular LDGM codes are central to the claimed invention of the patents-in-
6 suit. (*See, e.g.*, ’710 patent, col. 3:54-55 and Fig. 4.) The inventors discussed
7 among themselves that IRA codes “are just low-density GENERATOR matrix
8 codes, followed by an accumulator.” (*See* CALTECH000008667.) Each of the
9 patents states that the outer coder of the claimed IRA codes “may be a low-density
10 generator matrix (LDGM) coder that performs an irregular repeat of the k bits in
11 the block, as shown in Fig.4.” (*See, e.g.*, ’710 patent, col. 3:51-54.) And
12 dependent claims of the patents recite this embodiment explicitly. (*See, e.g.* ’710
13 patent, claims 7 and 20; ’032 patent, claim 6; ’781 patent, claim 5.) Luby 97’s
14 disclosure of an irregular LDGM in the prior art would thus have been material to a
15 Patent Examiner considering the patentability of the claims of the patents-in-suit.

16 578. In his doctoral thesis, Dr. Khandekar acknowledges that “Luby et al. also
17 introduced the concept of irregularity” in error correction codes, which was a
18 “major breakthrough” in 1997, and that IRA codes are merely an application of
19 Luby’s “concept of irregularity to the ensemble of RA codes” described in
20 Divsalar. (CALTECH000003345, 3346; *see also* CALTECH000003293 (IRA
21 codes “are adapted from the previously known class of repeat-accumulate (RA)
22 codes”); CALTECH000003350 (“Having reviewed the basic properties of irregular
23 LDPC codes, let us now apply the concept of irregularity to the ensemble of RA
24 codes defined in Section 1.2.6 to get the ensemble of irregular RA codes.”). Dr.
Khandekar’s thesis even shows the Tanner graph of Luby 97’s irregular LDPC
code (Fig. 3.1), the Tanner graph of Divsalar’s RA code (Fig. 1.6), and how when
combined these produce the Tanner graph of an IRA code (Fig. 3.2).

1 (CALTECH000003315, 3347, and 3350.) Showing similar awareness of Luby's
2 materiality, Dr. Jin wrote to a Caltech colleague on May 4, 2000 – just fourteen
3 days before filing his provisional application with the Patent Office – that “the
4 papers on codes achieving BEC capacity are most written by Luby,” that Luby's
5 subject is “irregular low density parity check codes,” and that Dr. Jin's “group is
6 also working on that subject, ... but that hasn't been disclosed yet.”

7 (CALTECH000008875 (emphasis added).) The Patent Examiner had a copy of
8 Divsalar during prosecution of the patents-in-suit, but was never provided a copy
9 of Luby 97 or informed that the claimed IRA codes were merely an application of
10 Luby's “concept of irregularity” to Divsalar's RA codes. Nor was the Patent
11 Examiner informed of the fact that, as Dr. Jin testified to during his deposition, the
12 accumulator of the patents-in-suit is identical to the accumulator disclosed in
13 Divsalar. (Jin Tr. at 122:7-13, 129:5-15, 134:12-18; *see also* Wicker Tr. at 87:2-9,
14 95:15-20, 109:9-20; Khandekar Tr. at 306:6-17.) Nor was the Patent Examiner
15 told what Dr. Jin freely admitted to his Caltech colleague – that Luby 97 disclosed
16 the same “subject” as his and his named co-inventor's work. It is more likely than
17 not that the claims would not have issued in their present form had this information
18 been disclosed to the Patent Office.

19 579. The applicants also made affirmative representations to the Patent Office
20 regarding the patentability of their then-pending patent claims that they could not
21 have made had they disclosed Luby 97. In an office action dated September 3,
22 2004, the Patent Examiner rejected then pending claims of the '710 patent as
23 invalid in light of U.S. Patent No. 6,014,411 to Wang (hereinafter, “Wang”).

24 (CALTECH000000117-118, 120-124.) The applicants responded on November 22,
2004 by arguing that their claims were patentable over Wang:

580. The encoding arrangement shown in Figure 5 of Wang uses a fixed
repetition rate “r” ...

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

...
There is no indication in Wang that the rate r is irregular. Rather, all bits are repeated the same number of times, i.e., regularly.
Each of independent claims 11, 15, and 24 recites that in a first encoding, bits are repeated “irregularly” or “a different number of times”. Accordingly, Applicant submits that claims 11, 15, and 24, and their dependencies, are allowable.

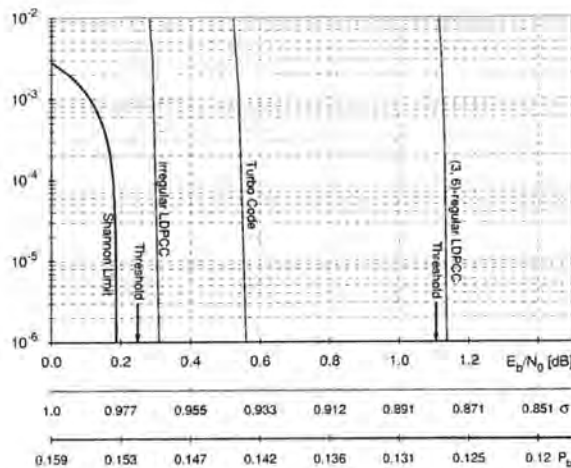
(CALTECH000000110-111.) The applicants’ sole argument for the patentability of their claims over Wang was thus that “[t]here is no indication in Wang that the rate r is irregular,” and “[r]ather, [in Wang] all bits are repeated the same number of times, i.e., regularly.” (*Id.*) Because Luby 97 teaches that replacing a regular code with an irregular code produces substantially improved performance, as discussed above, this reference supplies the precise element that the applicants claimed was missing from Wang. Had Luby 97’s prior art teaching to improve the performance of regular codes by making them irregular been disclosed to the Patent Office, the argument would have been significantly weakened, and the claims would not have issued in their present form (because, *e.g.*, the Examiner would have been equipped to respond by pointing out that making a regular code irregular – the basis for Caltech’s distinction – was already well known in the art). For at least the reasons given above, Luby97 is material to the patentability of the claimed invention.

B. Luby98 and Richardson99

581. Luby98 and Richardson99 are also material to the patentability of the claims of the patents in suit because they teach irregular LDPC codes, which are not taught by any of the references that were before the Patent Office during prosecution.

582. Irregular LDPC codes are the primary focus of the Richardson99 paper (Richardson99 at 1) (“In this paper we present *irregular* low-density parity check

1 codes (LDPCs) which exhibit performance extremely close to the best possible as
 2 determined by the Shannon capacity formula”) (emphasis in original).
 3 Richardson99 includes experimental data indicating that irregular LDPC codes
 4 exhibit significantly lower error rates than both regular LDPC codes and regular
 5 turbocodes, as shown in Figure 2, reproduced below:



13 Richardson, Fig. 2, comparing performance of various codes

14 583. Acknowledging its materiality, Dr. Jin testified that Richardson99 is “very
 15 relevant to [the] patent,” and that it “represents the best codes in irregular LDPC
 16 code.” (Jin Tr. at 199:9-16.) After testifying that Richardson99 was material,
 17 however, Dr. Jin testified that he chose to instead disclose a non-prior art 2001
 18 version of the paper to the Patent Office. (Jin Tr. at 211:7-14 (“Q. The question is:
 19 The version of Richardson and Urbanke that’s actually disclosed here on the
 20 patents themselves is the 2001 version, correct? A. This is correct. We had their
 21 original preprint and I think that after their publication become official, that we
 22 changing [sic] to the official version of that paper.”); *see also*
 23 CALTECH000023593 (showing publication of Richardson99 in April 1999).)

24 584. Similarly, Luby98 describes “error-correcting codes based on random
irregular bipartite graphs, which we call *irregular codes*” (Luby98 at 249)

1 (emphasis added). In particular, Luby98 describes irregular Gallager codes (*i.e.*,
2 LDPC codes), and teaches that adding irregularity to known regular Gallager codes,
3 can significantly enhance decoding performance (*see id.*).

4 585. The idea of irregular codes is central to the claimed invention, and is not
5 taught by any of the references that were before the Patent Office during
6 prosecution of the patents-in-suit. As I explain above, the importance of
7 irregularity to the claimed invention is underscored by the applicant's own
8 statements about the Wang reference during prosecution of the '710 patent and
9 their disclosure of the 2001 non-prior art version of Richardson.

10 586. For at least these reasons, the Luby98 and Richardson99 references are
11 material to the patentability of the claimed invention.

12 **XIV. CLAIM CHARTS**

13 587. Attached hereto as exhibits B-E are claim charts that summarize the
14 invalidity analysis presented herein. Attached hereto as exhibits F-H are claim
15 charts that summarize the materiality analysis presented herein. The evidence
16 presented in these charts is intended as a representative sample of the evidence
17 relied upon in this report; it is not an exhaustive list of evidence upon which I rely.

18 **XV. TRIAL EXHIBITS**

19 588. I may rely on visual aids and demonstrative exhibits that demonstrate the
20 bases of my opinions. Examples of these visual aids and demonstrative exhibits
21 may include, for example, claim charts, patent drawings, excerpts from patent
22 specifications, file histories, interrogatory responses, deposition testimony and
23 deposition exhibits, as well as charts, diagrams, videos and animated or computer-
24 generated video.

1 589. Other than as referred to in this report, I have not yet prepared any exhibits
2 for use at trial as a summary or support for the opinions expressed in this report,
3 but I expect to do so in accordance with the Court's scheduling order.

4 **XVI. COMPENSATION**

5 590. I am being paid at my ordinary and customary hourly rate of \$600, plus
6 expenses, for my time spent working on this matter. My compensation does not
7 depend on the outcome of this case.

8 **XVII. SUPPLEMENTATION OF OPINIONS**

9 591. I reserve the right to supplement my opinions after I have and the
10 opportunity to review expert reports or other materials from Plaintiff or other
11 additional documents or materials that are brought to my attention.
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

1 APPENDIX A

2 **Mathematical Representations of Error-Correcting Codes**

3 592. Coding theorists often think of error-correcting codes in linear-algebraic
4 terms. Linear algebra is the branch of mathematics that deals with vectors and the
5 linear transformations that can be applied to vectors.⁶⁸

6 593. In linear-algebraic terms, a k -bit block of information bits is a k -dimensional
7 vector of bits and an n -bit codeword is an n -dimensional vector of bits. The
8 encoding process, which converts blocks of information bits into codewords, is a
9 linear transformation that maps k -dimensional bit vectors to n -dimensional bit
10 vectors. This transformation is represented by a $k \times n$ matrix G called a *generator*
11 *matrix*. For an information vector $\mathbf{u} = [u_1, u_2, u_3, \dots, u_k]$ the codeword $\mathbf{x} = [x_1, x_2,$
12 $x_3, \dots, x_n]$ is given by: $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{u}G$, where:

13
$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{u}G = \begin{bmatrix} \sum_{i=1}^k G_{i,1} u_i \\ \sum_{i=1}^k G_{i,2} u_i \\ \sum_{i=1}^k G_{i,3} u_i \\ \vdots \\ \sum_{i=1}^k G_{i,n} u_i \end{bmatrix}$$

14
15
16
17
18
19 594. The image of G , denoted $\text{Im}(G)$, represents the set of n -dimensional vectors
20 that are valid codewords. Because $k < n$, G is not surjective, meaning that not all
21 n -dimensional vectors are valid codewords. A $(n-k) \times n$ matrix H , called a *parity*
22 *check matrix*, can be used to determine whether a particular n -dimensional vector

23 ⁶⁸ A linear transformation is a mathematical function that preserves addition and scalar
24 multiplication. More formally, a function f is linear if and only if, for all x, y , and α : $\alpha f(x + y) =$
 $f(\alpha x) + f(\alpha y)$. Every matrix represents a linear transformation.

1 is a valid codeword. In particular, for an n -dimensional vector \mathbf{x} , \mathbf{x} is a valid
2 codeword if and only if $H\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. In linear-algebraic terms, the image of G is equal
3 to the kernel of H .

4 595. Each of the $n - k$ rows of the parity-check matrix H represents an equation
5 that a valid codeword must satisfy. For example, consider a codeword \mathbf{x} and a
6 parity check matrix H given as follows:

7

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \end{bmatrix} \quad H = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

10

11 596. If \mathbf{x} is a valid codeword, the product $H\mathbf{x}$ must be equal to $\mathbf{0}$, so we have:

12

$$H\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_3 + x_4 \\ x_1 + x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{0}$$

14

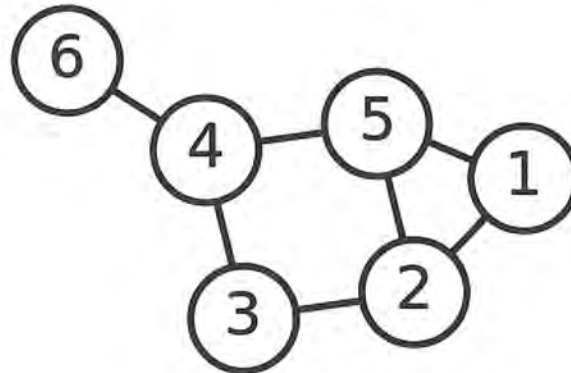
15 As this equation shows, the first row of H represents the constraint that $x_3 + x_4 = 0$,
16 and the second row of H represents the constraint that $x_1 + x_2 = 0$. If the vector \mathbf{x}
17 satisfies both of these constraints, it is a valid codeword.

18 597. In practice, parity-check matrices have hundreds or thousands of rows, each
19 of which represents an equation of the form $x_a + x_b + \dots + x_z = 0$, similar to those
20 shown in the above example. These equations are called *parity-check* equations.

21 598. Another popular mathematical representation of error-correcting codes is the
22 "Tanner Graph." Tanner graphs were named after R. Michael Tanner, who
23 described the concept in a 1981 publication titled "A Recursive Approach to Low
24

1 Complexity Codes.”⁶⁹ A Tanner graph is a graphical depiction of the parity matrix
2 H .

3 599. A “graph” in this context is a group of objects, or *nodes*, that may be linked
4 together by connections called *edges*. A simple graph is shown below:



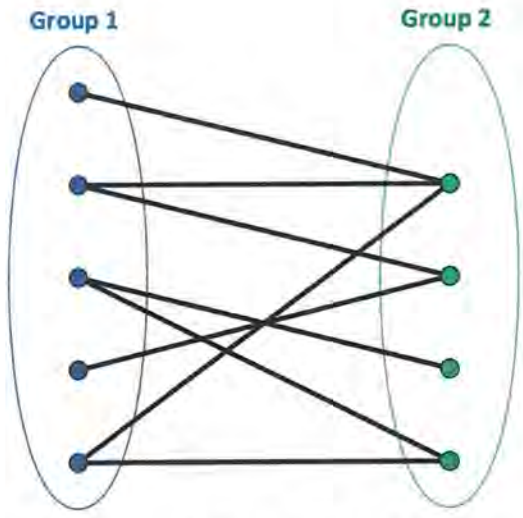
5
6
7
8
9
10
11 **A Simple Graph**

12 600. The nodes in the graph above are represented by the circles labeled 1
13 through 6, and the edges are represented as lines connecting the nodes (*e.g.*, the
14 straight line connecting nodes 6 and 4 is an edge). When two nodes are connected
15 by an edge, we say that the nodes are *adjacent*.

16 601. Tanner graphs are part of a class of graphs called *bipartite* graphs. A
17 bipartite graph is a graph whose nodes can be divided into two groups, such that
18 every edge connects a node from one group to a node from the other (*i.e.*, no two
19 nodes in the same group are adjacent). A bipartite graph is shown below:
20
21
22

23
24 ⁶⁹ Tanner, R. M., “A recursive approach to low complexity codes,” *IEEE Transactions on Information Theory*, vol. 27, pp. 533–547 (September 1981).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24



A Simple Bipartite Graph

The two groups of nodes in the bipartite graph above are labeled “Group 1” and “Group 2.” Note that no node in Group 1 is connected to any other node in Group 1, and no node in Group 2 is connected to any other node in Group 2.

602. Tanner graphs are bipartite graphs that represent error-correcting codes. A Tanner graph includes one group of nodes called *variable nodes* that correspond to the information and parity bits, and a second group of nodes *check nodes* that represent the relationship between the parity and information bits. The variable nodes include two types of nodes: *information nodes* that correspond to information bits input to the code, and *parity nodes*, that correspond to parity bits. Generally, a Tanner graph will have n variable nodes and $n - k$ check nodes, where n is the number of bits in the codeword, and k is the number of information bits per block. Variable nodes are not connected to other variable nodes, and check nodes are not connected to other check nodes (this is what makes Tanner graphs bipartite).

603. Intuitively, one can think of a Tanner graph as a representation of the interrelationships among the bits of a codeword. Each variable node v_i corresponds to a bit b_i in the codeword. Each check node represents a mathematical

1 relationship among the bits to which it is connected. Specifically, when a check
2 node is connected to variable nodes $v_1, v_2, v_3, \dots, v_r$, it means that the corresponding
3 bits of the codeword must add up to 0. That is: $b_1 \oplus b_2 \oplus b_3 \oplus \dots \oplus b_r = 0$. Each
4 check node of the Tanner graph represents a different group of encoded bits that
5 must sum to 0.

6 604. As I mentioned above, a Tanner graph for a particular code is a graphical
7 depiction of that code's parity-matrix H . In a Tanner graph, each of the variable
8 nodes $v_1 \dots v_n$ represents a bit in the codeword, and each of the check nodes $c_1 \dots$
9 c_{n-k} represents a parity-check equation. As I explained earlier, each column of H
10 represents a bit of the codeword, and each row of H represents a parity-check
11 equation that a valid codeword must satisfy. Thus, the variable nodes and check
12 nodes correspond to the columns and rows of H , respectively. The edges of the
13 Tanner graph correspond to the 1s in the parity-check matrix: if there is a 1 at the
14 i^{th} row and the j^{th} column of H (i.e., if $H_{ij} = 1$), then there is an edge connecting the
15 i^{th} check node to the j^{th} variable node. Conversely, if $H_{ij} = 0$, the i^{th} check node
16 and the j^{th} variable node are not connected.

17 605. Matrices and Tanner graphs are two equivalent ways of describing error-
18 correcting cods. Every linear code has a matrix representation and a Tanner graph
19 representation.

20 606. A related graphical representation of codes is the factor graph (Kschischang
21 et al, IEEE Trans Inform Theory Vol 47, No 2, pp 498-519, February 2001). A
22 factor graph is more general than a Tanner graph in two ways: (a) Some of the
23 variable nodes may be unobserved, i.e., in the context of coding some variables
24 may not correspond to information bits or parity bits; (b) The check nodes can
25 implement more general functional relationships between the variables and can
26 even represent continuous relationships such as those found in probability theory.
27 Convolutional codes can be represented by factor graphs, where there are three

1 types of variable: (a) variables corresponding to information bits; (b) variables
2 corresponding to parity bits; and (c) variables that correspond to the memory of the
3 convolutional code. The latter variables are usually not transmitted over the
4 channel. In a truncated convolutional code, the information bits themselves may
5 not be transmitted, resulting in a non-systematic code. Or, some parity bits may be
6 punctured. In all of these scenarios, an iterative sum-product decoding algorithm
7 can be used to determine the codeword and the information bits, given the output
8 of the channel.

8 607. It is widely recognized that Tanner graphs can be modified slightly to allow
9 for variables that are not transmitted across the channel, such as variables
10 corresponding to the memory of a convolutional code. Consequently, within the
11 context of coding, Tanner graphs can be used to represent codes with such
12 “unobserved variables”, and in this report I frequently refer to Tanner graphs with
13 this additional functionality.
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24

Date: January 28, 2015



Dr. Brendan Frey, PhD.